Running a Senior Scout Troop

by

MELVILLE BALSILLIE

An official handbook for Scouters.
Editor’s Note:

The reader is reminded that these texts have been written a long time ago. Consequently, they may use some terms or express sentiments which were current at the time, regardless of what we may think of them at the beginning of the 21st century. For reasons of historical accuracy they have been preserved in their original form.

If you find them offensive, we ask you to please delete this file from your system. This and other traditional Scouting texts may be downloaded from The Dump.

(Editor’s Note: This book is formatted in its original form, both in size and layout.)
FOREWORD

SENIOR SCOUTING goes back to very early days in the Movement, when many large Troops split them into two on an age basis. It was not until 1946 that authority was given for Senior Scouting to be regarded as a separate branch. There was much to learn and much experience to be gained, and there was little value in a Handbook based on theory.

Melville Balsillie is not only a very wise man but he has had from the beginning a faith in the value of Senior Scout training. He has experimented and drawn valuable conclusions which are embraced in this book which should be invaluable to all who are starting a new Troop or who are taking over for the first time one that has been established. This age group requires most careful leadership - it is not easy - it is indeed a challenge but when the challenge is met, as it will be if you are guided by the words of this book, you will reap a rich reward.

LOOK WIDE.

Chief Scout.
WHEN Melville Balsillie first wrote this book in 1957 he brought all his great experience with the age group for which Senior Scouting caters to its preparation. In doing this he rendered a fine service to the Movement and it is significant that now that the time has arrived to present another edition of the book the major part of the original text is still as applicable as it was when first written.

Nonetheless, there have been a number of changes - evidence, surely, that Scouting never stands still and that it is always abreast of modern thought and development - and these changes have been included in this new edition. I would refer you, in particular, to Chapter 19 entitled “Postscript” which has been added to the author’s original book.

The Senior Scout Section of the Movement continues to make progress. I am sure that this is due to the development of our training resources both on Scouter and Senior Scout levels. I think, too, that out of experiment and trial we are beginning to find some of the answers in relation to Senior Scouting for which we have been searching. But there is still much to be done and we ought to be retaining more of our senior boys than we are. There is no room for complacency - we cannot stand still. We certainly won’t, and I commend this Handbook with confidence to every member of the Movement who is interested in the boy of from 15 to 18 years of age. It will provide a foundation on which to build your Senior Scout Troop and thus it fulfils its intentions most admirably.

I hope that this book will become one of the means of supplying many hours of happy, worthwhile and adventurous Senior Scouting to many thousands of our young men.

LAURENCE STRINGER
INTRODUCTION

THIS is a Handbook for Scout Leaders in charge of Senior Scout Troops or who have Scouts over 15 years old in their charge and for Commissioners whose especial duty is to be responsible for this challenging section of our Movement. Please note I have not called it “How to run a Senior Troop”. I would not dare to tell anybody how to run his Troop. Each one is so different and, because this is so, the best function this little book can assume is to give general advice and leave the rest to the good sense of the Scout Leader.

“I would not dare tell anybody how to run his Troop.”

I am only too aware of many of the shortcomings of this little book. To include all that should be told would make it far too long and make it far too expensive. I have therefore left out many interesting facets of our training method and have confined myself as strictly as possible to the “bread and butter” part of our job. For this reason I have not sought to cater for the Scout Leaders of Senior Sea Scout Troops or Senior Air Scout Troops. They must each write their own special “gen” book, and in the meantime I hope they will find the broad principles interesting and helpful. I have tried to give the reasons behind much of our training and I hope thereby to have made a small contribution to Senior Scout thought.

I had better apologise now for the continual use of the first person throughout this book. You see, I write as I speak and have always done so. I do hope this will not annoy too many people. Although this is an official handbook, you must remember that it has been written by one man and that, therefore, it must not be thought to be infallible. A Prime Minister long ago once commented on the “many – sidedness of truth”, and, although H.Q. have backed this book, I am sure none of us wishes to be too dogmatic.
Our Movement has been a wonderful success with boys from eight years old until thirteen or fourteen, but after then we have not been so successful. Neither have any of the other Youth Organisations. Adolescents are difficult to manage and train and still more difficult to understand. They wish to go their own way. They fight shy of any kind of discipline and restraint. In Senior Scouting, however, we have an answer which has been proved a wonderful success whenever it has been properly applied. Be in no doubt, my friends, we are on a good wicket. It is not surprising, therefore, that Senior Scouting is making great progress and that more and more Senior Troops are going from strength to strength both in numbers and achievement. It is a most cheering picture. Long may it continue.

“Adolescents are difficult”

You will, I know, be as delighted as I am to read the Foreword by our Chief. Under his leadership let us all plunge into the fray and give our Seniors something of the vision and dedication bequeathed to us and them by men like B.-P., Lord Somers, and Lord Rowallan. Good luck to you all.

MELVILLE BALSILLIE.
Chapter 1
THE SCOUT LEADER’S OWN INITIAL PREPARATION

FIRST of all, may I offer you my hearty and sincere congratulations on agreeing to take on a Senior Scout Troop. Don’t believe a word the cynics say about “Letting yourself in for it” or “He’s had it now”. I have been an S.S.L. for many years and, by and large, it is a most refreshing job, - not too complex if a sense of proportion is preserved and one which is of vital importance to the nation. In simple truth, you are taking on a national service. We were told by those who ought to know that the chief failing in young National Servicemen was lack of self-confidence and lack of initiative. Senior Scout training is admitted on all sides to be a jolly effective answer and our methods are being introduced in other youth organisations. It is, therefore, your job now to assimilate Senior Scout training methods and then put that training across to your new Troop in your own way.

“Letting yourself in for it.”

Scouting does not lend itself to creating types. We encourage Scouters to be themselves and Scouts to develop according to their individual gifts and ability. No Hitler Youth for us. Long ago B.-P. wrote:- “Think most what appeals to the boy and do the rest through the good sense of the Scoutmaster”. The genius of Scouting is its universality. Thus your version of Senior Scouting must really be your own. Think out your plans - in detail and on a broad canvas. Make sure that your background is right and that the mechanics of your proposed training are in line with P.O.R. Then go straight ahead - naturally, humbly, with gaiety, and, of course, with enthusiastic determination. You will soon find that somehow
you will have to try to cultivate all these virtues. Make no mistake, in many ways you are a pioneer.

The next chapter is on how actually to start a Senior Troop. But, before you start thinking in terms of Groups, Troops, Scouters, Parents, Clergy, Headquarters and boys, you must get your background canvas completely filled in. This may well take a few weeks and it is time exceedingly well spent and must not be rushed through on any account. You must most certainly read “Scouting for Boys” and, attempting to get back to 1908, seek to absorb (maybe for the 2nd or 102nd time) the spirit and vision which B.-P. gave us. He was tremendously hot on self-reliance and initiative. He also wrote the Scout Law. You should also read “Aids to Scoutmastership” and “Rovering to Success” - both by B.-P. first then, steep yourself in B.-P.

Having assimilated this main background, I think the next step is to read such Senior Scout literature as there is. The main book is “Look Wide” - as it is now called. It gives an extremely accurate survey of Senior Scout activity as a whole together with its philosophy of outlook and a statement of its broad aims. It is largely an inspirational book in contradistinction to this one which seeks to give hints on how to put this inspiration and broader picture into practice in a particular Troop. The pamphlet “Over 15” should also be studied carefully. The other book I feel you should read - and I really must mention this because there is no other alternative to
recommend - is “Mid Moor and Mountain”, the book on week-end and summer expeditions written by Jim Westwood and me. There are lots of essential technical books like Watkin Williams’ book on First-Aid and all the excellent badge books published by H.Q. but I suggest these can wait for a month or two. It is much more important to get your background right first, browse on the ideas you have absorbed and make them your own. This is of superlative importance. You must have a clear-cut objective. You must know what you are seeking to do. You must be quite sure that Senior Scouting is worthwhile and that you are determined to make your new Troop a tremendous success. Later, of course, you must earn a Wood Badge, the first stage towards which is to attend a Preliminary Training Course.

“Browse on the ideas you have absorbed.”

Having arrived at this stage you can now work out the actual details of starting your new Troop. You will be looking forward to this, so let us turn to Chapter 2.
A MISTAKE that so many of us made when Senior Scouts were introduced was to start a Troop without first making sure that it could be maintained. You must not do that. Two conditions must prevail before you start:–

1. Six boys over 15 and under 18. You simply must have two Patrols and, while you could have a Patrol of 2 for a month or so, a Patrol must have a permanent strength of at least three. Please note, therefore, that I do NOT (please repeat NOT) recommend starting with one Patrol unless that Patrol is going to tie up with another Patrol from another Group. Lone Patrols, we have found out time and time again, thrive splendidly for a few months and then just fade away. There must be competition. Thus your nominal roll might well be something like this:–

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Date of Birth</th>
<th>Date of Entry</th>
<th>Date of Leaving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Robin</td>
<td>1.11.39</td>
<td>On 30th Sept.</td>
<td>16.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David</td>
<td>1.07.40</td>
<td></td>
<td>16.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin</td>
<td>1.07.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>1.02.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert</td>
<td>1.08.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jim</td>
<td>1.09.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. You must be convinced that there is a reasonable likelihood of there being at least six in this Senior Troop continuously over the next three years. To find out about this you must get from the S.M. of the Boy Scout Troop a list of his active members with their dates of birth. He might well give you a list like this:–

“Reasonable likelihood of there being at least six.”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1.04.42</td>
<td>14.06</td>
<td>To Seniors - Easter, 1957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basil</td>
<td>1.07.42</td>
<td>14.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geoffrey</td>
<td>1.05.43</td>
<td>13.05</td>
<td>To Seniors - Easter, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael</td>
<td>1.05.43</td>
<td>13.05</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris</td>
<td>1.08.43</td>
<td>13.02</td>
<td>To Seniors – Sept, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alan</td>
<td>1.10.43</td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barry</td>
<td>1.10.43</td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Des</td>
<td>1.12.43</td>
<td>12.10</td>
<td>To Seniors - Christmas, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronnie</td>
<td>1.12.43</td>
<td>12.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derek</td>
<td>1.01.44</td>
<td>12.09</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roger</td>
<td>1.04.44</td>
<td>12.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George</td>
<td>1.04.44</td>
<td>12.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terry</td>
<td>1.06.44</td>
<td>12.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard</td>
<td>1.06.44</td>
<td>12.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlie</td>
<td>1.07.44</td>
<td>12.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian</td>
<td>1.08.44</td>
<td>12.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plus another nine boys of eleven years old.

From this you will see the old familiar picture:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14 year olds</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total: 25 – which is an average number for a reasonable good Boy Scout Troop.

You can thus expect to have John and Basil joining you at Easter 1957. I include Basil because he will be over 15 at Summer Camp time. If he stays in the Boy Scout Troop until September he will have the training of only two Senior Scout Expeditions because he will be over 18 by August 1960. Thus, if the S.M. of the Boy Scout Troop can so arrange his promotions so as to allow Basil to go up at Easter when he is 14-9, it is probably a good thing - but it all depends on Basil and his parents. If he is an advanced sort of fellow he certainly ought to go up, but if he is young for his age he might as well stay in the Boy Scout Troop until September. But only in very exceptional circumstances should a plea from the S.M. of “I simply must have him at summer camp” be allowed to prevail. Only in quite exceptional

“If he is young for his age.”
circumstances should the boy’s training take second place to the Troop’s presumed needs. This plea is usually greatly exaggerated anyway. I hope S.M.s will not be after my blood for saying this because it applies to us all - to C.M.s when Cubs come up to the Boy Scout Troop and to us S.S.L.s when we are due to pass on our chaps to the Crew or hand them back to the Pack or Troop as Scouters. Thus you should expect John and Basil at Easter 1957 and Geoffrey and Michael at Easter 1958. It might even be expedient to promote Chris at the same time. This may well depend whether Chris is friendly with Geoffrey and Michael or with Alan and Barry. Let all these matters be discussed pleasantly at the regular meetings of the Group Council.

I normally recommend three times a year for promotions - September, Christmas, and Easter - and I have gone on this assumption in this chapter. But please remember we must never be hidebound. The Scoutmaster may suddenly notice the failing interest and keenness of one of his chaps. He may even be a P/L or a 1st Class Scout, but, all the same, he will say to him “Up you go, before you’re gone”. The needs of the individual boy are paramount always. A day may be vital. I have known it so. But normally I recommend these three times and, if that is so, the strength of this proposed Senior Scout Troop that you are thinking of starting will be as follows - always provided that what leakage there is, is balanced by recruiting from outside the Movement:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial intake at</th>
<th>From the Boy Scout</th>
<th>To Crew or Scouters</th>
<th>Total Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30th September 1956</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas 1956</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easter 1957</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 1957</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Robin</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas 1957</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easter 1958</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>David</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 1958</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas 1958</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Peter and Martin</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easter 1959</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Robert</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is all delightfully theoretical, and it is just plain silly to rely entirely on estimates like these. It takes no account of leakage
either in your own Troop or in the Boy Scout Troop - and there will certainly be leakage in both. It also ignores recruits to either Troop. But I do most certainly recommend you make a table like this for it gives you the best possible picture, and, if this best possible picture shows doubtful position, don’t go ahead.

The picture I have shown is quite a good one, and I would not hesitate a moment in starting a Senior Troop with the six boys mentioned. They may well reach three Patrols in a couple of years. This, of course, presumes two things:-

1. That the new Senior Troop will be sufficiently exciting not only to keep most of its Seniors but to attract those growing up in the Boy Scout Troop.
2. That the Boy Scout Troop is a happy crowd.

The Headquarters

Obviously you must have somewhere to meet. My own bunch meet in a Sunday School Glass Room from 7-30 until 9-15 p.m. when the Boy Scout Troop vacates the larger hall. We go on until 10 p.m.

This is certainly not ideal, but it serves. We are forced out - which is no bad thing. We have a dozen fellows now, but, when we were just six odd, we had to be content with one room for planning and indoor stuff and going outside for the rest. We managed fine. B.-P. used to say that a Headquarters is a place where you start from, so the ideal is a homely sort of room which belongs solely to the Senior Troop, somewhere you can store your gear, cover the walls with trophies and ropes, paint a star map on the ceiling, and of which every Senior has a key. Something to aim at, anyway.

“I do not set too much store on elaborate Headquarters.”

I do not set too much store on elaborate Headquarters.
This is one of the least of your worries and need not be a problem at all. If the boys want to meet, they will find a place. Just as easy as that.

**Group Backing**

The Group Scoutmaster must, of course, be in favour and the whole enterprise backed by the Group Council. It is absolutely essential for all the Group Scouters to act as a team, and all the existing Scouters must welcome the man who is taking on the Seniors. He must have everybody’s backing. Let him feel it. Let the Group Council listen to his plans and seek to help all they can. I hope the G.S.M. will seek every opportunity to praise the Seniors personally, so that they feel that they are a really useful bunch of fellows.

**District Permission**

The District Commissioner or his A.D.C. (S) must give permission before a Senior Scout section can be started.

Don’t feel put out or put off if the District people seem a trifle cautious or cynical. If your plans are good, if you are enthusiastic, if the Group Council are behind you, and if you are keen to learn - then the District will undoubtedly welcome you. In most Districts the “Senior” leaders are sufficiently small in numbers to feel themselves to be real pioneers. And that is what they are. Each locality has its own problems, and remember what B.-P. said - “Leave it to the good sense of the Scoutmaster”. What may succeed in Capel Curig may be a flop in Liverpool. So seek out the Commissioner and get his advice. Ask him down to the first meeting so that the fellows may know that they are being properly constituted and that now it is up to them.

“The District people seem a trifle cautious or cynical.”
Investitures, Badges, and suchlike

Don’t even think about badges until every one of the preliminaries has been completed. A fellow becomes a Senior Scout by investiture and, before he can be so invested, he must: (1) be over 15 and under 18, and (2) be a 1st class Scout or have passed what is called the “Initial Test”. The Senior Scout programme presupposes a 1st class badge standard for all activities, and the sooner it .s attained the better. Thus, just as the young boy has to pass the Tenderfoot tests prior to investiture as a Boy Scout, I suggest that (except in unusual circumstances) we make the 1st Class badge a “must” before the investiture of a Senior Scout takes place. This may take a month or two, and Chapter 4 deals much more fully with the mechanics of this matter. Some of your initial intake may be 1st Class Scouts already, so invest them right away at the first official meeting when the District Commissioner is there. Hand them their hat badges, their maroon epaulettes and their pin-type lapel badges - all of which you should get in good time from the District Badge Secretary. Thereafter you will invest the remaining boys as and when they complete their 1st Class badge. I have used these tactics in our own Troop over the last six years, and they have worked well.

A word about the Initial Test. It can be a very useful device for making a fellow feel right “in” Senior Scouting in the shortest possible time. Some such necessity does from time to time arise. You may get a boy who, for some really adequate reason, is going to take quite some time before he gets his 1st Class badge or you may get a boy who is new to Scouting and this initial test may be found invaluable in providing a suitable introduction to Scouting and Scoutcraft. But they all have to get the 1st class badge sometime and it is often wise to use initial enthusiasm to that end.

The Initial Test rules are: 247o. Before being invested as a Senior Scout he must either hold the First Class Badge; or complete the Initial Test to the satisfaction of his Scouter, as follows:—
1. Understand the Scout Promise and Law in accordance with his age and development.

2. Pass or re-pass the Tenderfoot and Second Class tests.

3. Hike or row a boat with a Senior Scout a distance of eight miles. He need not necessarily camp for the night, but must carry a pack properly packed by himself, erect a tent, light a fire, and cook a meal for himself and his companion; and on his return he must give a verbal report to the Troop or Patrol.

4. If not previously a Scout, have spent a total of at least three nights away from home in the company of Scouts (if possible, Senior Scouts) sleeping in a tent, hut, barn, or similar shelter.

It may well be that one or other of your Seniors will want to be tested in one of the Senior badges within hours of being invested. Good show! Make sure he knows his stuff, buy a book of badge certificates from the Badge Secretary and start using it right away. Show progress as soon as possible.

**Records**

What a lot of trouble and work would be saved if we began properly at the start! I use a little notebook about 5 ins, by 8 ins, of 50 pages (100 sides) and it lasts me a year.

I start a fresh book every 1st October and I use it for everything connected with the organisation of the Troop. Let me explain it in greater detail. Page 1 starts off like this:- “This notebook belongs to………………if found please return to me or phone……… Thank you very much.” I’ve never lost it yet, but what a lot of work it would cause me if I did. Then follows a list of the Queen’s Scouts and the date the badge was won. After six years the number is now 16.

“I use a little notebook.”
I suggest you start with the heading and number down to six. That’s what I did, but it was not until two years later that I was able to write in the first name. But always have a target.

Page two is ruled into four columns and gives personal details of each boy in order of age. Following our previous examples, this page would read like this:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R. Jones</td>
<td>1.11.39</td>
<td>2 London Road</td>
<td>H1L1212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Smith</td>
<td>1.07.40</td>
<td>4 Birmingham Avenue</td>
<td>BAR 1212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Brown</td>
<td>1.01.41</td>
<td>6 Aberdeen Terrace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Taylor</td>
<td>1.02.41</td>
<td>8 Dublin Crescent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. Davies</td>
<td>1.08.41</td>
<td>10 Cardiff Close</td>
<td>ENT 1212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Jenkins</td>
<td>1.09.41</td>
<td>12 Queen’s Way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Page three, which is opposite page 2 in my present book, consists of four similar columns. At the top of the page are recorded the names and particulars of all the boys who have the Senior Troop and have left us for whatever reason. It is extraordinary how useful this little list is. The bottom half of this page records the same particulars of boys in the Boy Scout Troop who will be 15 and 14 during the year. Thus, as the year passes, the 15’s get transferred from page 3 to page 2 if all goes well. Regarding the younger boys, it is a very good thing for the S.S.L. and all the Senior Troop to know exactly who is due to come up during the current year and next.

Page 4 is an attendance record and might look like this:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>O 5</th>
<th>O 12</th>
<th>O 19</th>
<th>O 26</th>
<th>N 2</th>
<th>N 9</th>
<th>N 17</th>
<th>N 23</th>
<th>N 30</th>
<th>D 7</th>
<th>D 14</th>
<th>D 21</th>
<th>D 28</th>
<th>J 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R. JONES</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. SMITH</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.BROWN</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.TAYLOR</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. DAVIES</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The (/), of course, means present and correct. “E” means excused or denotes that a fellow has been mannerly enough to seek
permission (which is invariably granted) from his T/L or S.S.L. prior to the meeting. “A” means absent without proper notice. I encourage Patrol Leaders to keep a similar record of their own Patrol. Sometimes, when things go wrong, you wonder at Court of Honour what to do with a slacker, and it is vital to know exactly what his attendance record is like. When you or the P/L see the young man it is more impressive to be able to say “During the last 8 weeks you have been absent 4 times and on only one occasion did you let any of us know beforehand. Look at the and compare for yourself your record with that of the of the fellows.” This is very much better than just able to say - “You’ve been very irregular in your attendance lately, you know”.

Page 5 is in the form of a chart and shows the Scoutcraft efficiency of each member. This is how I draw it up:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Cl.</th>
<th>1 Cl.</th>
<th>VENTURE BADGE</th>
<th>2\textsuperscript{nd} B.T.B.</th>
<th>3\textsuperscript{rd} B.T.B.</th>
<th>Date B.T.</th>
<th>Public svce badge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 a b</td>
<td>2 a b</td>
<td>3 a b</td>
<td>4 a b c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. Jones</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>Astr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Smith</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The next four pages are devoted to charts of the programmes prepared by the Court of Honour and these will be described in much detail in Chapter 11. The rest of the book is used for all the odds and ends of running a Troop.

Logs
Start off with a clear cut policy about logs and then there is a good chance that they will really serve a useful purpose. Most, I am afraid, suffer from bursts of tremendous enthusiasm and periods of shameful neglect. I recommend Patrol logs under the supervision of the Patrol Leader plus a much more factual Troop Log kept either by the Scouter or the T/L. In this way you will build up Patrol independence and P/L responsibility and at the same time have in reserve a factually reliable record of the main happenings in the year - badges won, promotions, investitures and the like. So, decide at the start what you are going to do. See that the Patrols get
their log books immediately and exhibit the first entries you have made in the Troop log.

**Gear and Equipment**

When you are starting a new Troop, there is likely to be precious little money available. Every item of expenditure must come up before the whole Troop during the first few months because during that time particularly every member must feel he is personally liable for the whole show. What then do you need?

First of all you need personal emergency gear, and here is a little list - couched in a somewhat frivolous vein - of what each fellow is expected to carry about with him on his Scouting enterprises:-

1. A small First-Aid kit for- keeping people alive.
2. Sharp knife slitting throats.
4. Cord tying up crooks.
5. Torch signalling to Mars.
6. Clean handkerchief shedding scalding tears into.
7. Box of matches looking at sun-dials.
8. Notebook and pencil noting stolen cars.
9. Toggle-ropes (10 ft. of strong, reliable rope with a toggle one end)
10. Practice roller bandages all kinds of things.

You can see many ideas for activities opening up from this little list alone. Get a picture of your chaps - as they are now - practising their Senior Scouting. I consider that each fellow should wear an anorak (an eskimo-type of garment designed primarily to resist wind) as an essential item of uniform because it is tough and hard wearing and will stand all the stresses and strains of a Senior Scout’s uniform’s life. And that is saying summat! Thus, his uniform covered by an anorak, a toggle-rope round his waist, and carrying a small haversack (made by himself) holding other
accessories, he will be suitably arrayed for real Senior Scouting. All this need cost the Troop funds absolutely nothing for it is all personal expenditure and every keen Senior can make, adapt, or even buy everything I’ve mentioned. There is no official policy regarding these items and what I have said is of course, my own personal opinion.

But one or two other things will be needed. I suggest each Patrol has 50 feet of 1 ¼ in. (say) manila rope and a running pulley block. The ends of the rope should be carefully spliced so that the ends can easily pass through the pulley. This equipment costs about 25/- per Patrol and can soon be purchased from Patrol subs. I see no reason for any loan or grant from Group funds for any of this day-to-day equipment. Let the Troop finance it themselves and they will keep it better. I encourage each Patrol to keep its own gear but the S.S.L. must inspect it carefully at regular intervals.

Camping gear is quite another matter. It is very expensive and with care will last for a great many years. I do not think it fair normally to expect Patrol subs to purchase tents. Good light-weight tents, given proper and technical care, will last 12 years or more and it is not valid to expect a boy, whose use of them cannot exceed three years, to provide for posterity. In my view this a Group Committee’s job. Normally, they are mostly parents, and it is surely up to parents to give the Scouters the adequate tools for the training of their own boys. A good light-weight tent to-day (1964) costs about £20, and the other things a Patrol requires are cooking gear, canvas bucket and basin, hand-axe, a small area of latrine canvas, a trowel, and (if they are going to camp above the tree-line) a primus or solid fuel stove. Much of this can be made, improvised, or borrowed. I reckon, however, it costs about £25 to launch a Senior Patrol fully equipped with camping gear as stated above. If, of course, they make their own tent, the cost may well be reduced to just under £20. This may seem an awful lot of money and, judging by what we did in the early days of the Movement, it is. But times have changed and my experience has shown me that this amount of money can be found provided there is enthusiasm
for the venture. And without enthusiasm, you shouldn’t start anyway. But the Troop must prove itself worthy of this very considerable outlay, and it is up to the Scout Leader to emphasise this angle.

Money

The Troop must be allowed to control its own finances. They must learn to equate spending to income or income to expenditure - two vastly different ideas and aspects of training. Let them decide how much each week is due to the Patrol and Troop Treasurers respectively and let them debate what items of expenditure are debited to Patrol and Troop funds.

Let each Patrol have complete freedom with its own finances and let the Troop money be controlled by the Court of Honour or, if there is only one Patrol, by the Troop in Council. The Scouter should advise but not vote, but the T/L should do both. Both Scouter and T/L should pay subs to the Troop Treasurer.

One little thought on money. Don’t let Senior Scouting be spoilt or hampered by hole-in-the-corner finance. These boys of ours have far greater spending power than we ever had and they can afford to make a good job of things if they are keen. You must see that there is no extravagance and, above all, no waste.

Lay all these principles out clearly to the Troop from the very start. It is all part of their training and it will greatly help in establishing the right Troop tradition, Troop pride, and Troop independence.

General

I could write lots and lots more on the subject of starting a Troop but this chapter is long enough already. Other ideas will doubtless creep into subsequent chapters, so back you go to your Troop right now and good luck to you in all you do. You will find it all very good fun.
Chapter 3
THE PATROL LEADERS

WHEN we officially started Senior Scouts in 1946 we tended to soft-pedal the Patrol System. Our intention was to stress that Senior Scouting was much more adult than Boy Scouting and every possible difference in organisation was stressed. Thus, instead of full-throated Inter-Patrol Scouting, so distinctive and successful in a thriving Boy Scout Troop, we tended to run our activities on a Troop basis having the pioneering expert in charge of pioneering, the most experienced hiker and camper in charge of hikes and camps, the scientist type looking after the brainy side of things, and a committee of lively wags organising all the fun and games, socials, and such like. Experience has, in my view, shown that this is excellent in theory and works well in practice for a few months, but, quite frankly, I don’t recommend it as a permanent feature. I am tending more and more to emphasise the building up of a strong Patrol spirit in each Patrol and encouraging the authority of the P/L by every means in my power. But do not imagine that the inter-Patrol rivalry of the Boy Scout Troop will go down well in the Senior Scout Troop - because it won’t. A much lighter type of pastry is needed. I find they don’t want inter-Patrol competition of the running sort so successful in the Boy Scout Troop. Inter-Patrol competitions taking place will go down well providing the dominant note is fun and not intense rivalry.

"Senior Scouting was much more adult than Boy Scouting."

Another difference is the size of the Patrol. I have come to favour four and I prefer three to five. On the other hand, experience has taught me that it is stupid to promote a boy a P/L just because there
is a P/Lship vacant. He must be the right man. A year or so ago I was so stumped for leaders that I had two Patrols of 6 and 7 respectively - and no T/L. As our period of training is three years, having four fellows in each Patrol means that all of them may well be the P/L before they finish. Of course, it seldom works out like this in practice because birthdays run in bunches and you may lose a boy now and again. But, by and large, with four in a Patrol, most boys get their whack of leadership training - about which more anon.

Now let us examine what responsibilities can properly be placed on the shoulders of the P/Es. After that we can profitably consider the characteristics which we look for in a boy before making him a P/L and then finally we can examine the traits of character these incursions into leadership develop.

RESPONSIBILITIES TO BE GIVEN TO PATROL LEADERS

1. *The Court of Honour.* The general management of the Troop through the functioning of the Court of Honour. We shall discuss this in detail in Chapter 7.

2. *At the Week-Night Meeting.* The P/L has a dual role to play. First, he must lead his Patrol with enthusiasm and verve. He will know from his planning at Courts of Honour what is likely to happen and he must think ahead, match his brains and ability against the other P/Ls, and make sure his own men put up a good show. He will find this great fun and will eagerly look forward to the challenge. Secondly, he must take his share in the actual running of the programme. He may have a session to give, a game to run (though this is best left to the Seconds), and it may be his turn to act as Duty P/L whose job it is to attend efficiently to all ceremonial.

3. *Week-End Activities.* The P/Ls should vie with each other to achieve regular week-end activities which can rank as red-letter
days in the Patrol’s history. Say one every two months. They can get up to all sorts of jaunts - bivouac or cabin week-ends in the winter, bike expeditions in the summer, father and son “dos”, night hikes, other special trips worth doing, and possibly an extended wide game against a Patrol from a rival Troop. There is hardly any limit to what can happen and all you as a Scouter have to do is to see a brief summary of the plans beforehand (sometimes it is wise to inform the police of night jaunts) and look at the Patrol log afterwards. This is the Patrol Leader’s show and your main function is to praise what is good and make wise suggestions for avoiding at some future time some of the mistakes which will most certainly be made.

4. Attendance and Punctuality. The P/L is responsible that his men turn up at Troop Meetings on time and in uniform. Any potential absentee gets a message to his P/L somehow or other. Not to do so is bad manners and a mark of disrespect to the Troop. Thus, if any member of the Patrol fails to turn up one Troop Meeting and nobody has received a message of apology it must be presumed that he is either ill or dead. In either case a visit from his P/L at the earliest possible moment is called for. He really may be seriously ill and it is then that the Brotherhood of Scouts and the friendship of the Patrol is shown most splendidly. If this young man has just been slack and the P/L has put himself considerably about to visit him quickly, I am quite sure the P/L will know what action to take. Being meticulous in these things is of vital importance to the happy feeling in the Patrol and it is the P/L’s job to run the Patrol on the right lines. He should, of course, keep an attendance register of every meeting held, including Patrol Meetings and Church Parades. When slackers have to be dealt with, he will find it of great value. You must keep him up to all these things for even Patrol Leaders are inclined to let things slip sometimes.

5. The Scoutcraft Efficiency of his Patrol. The P/L is responsible for the Scoutcraft progress of each fellow in his Patrol. We have been told so often - and how true it certainly is - that boys leave Scouting chiefly because they are making no progress. Most boys
progress in a series of spasms but the Patrol Leader must be constantly relating Troop and Patrol programmes to the needs of each of his men. The next three chapters are devoted to progress in badge work, and all I want to emphasise here is that we Scouters must impress on our Patrol Leaders that it is their responsibility - not ours - to train their chaps. We’ll help all we can - which at times consists of reminder after reminder - but the initiative should come from the P/L. The Patrol Leaders, of course, keep a progress chart similar to that shown in the previous chapter.

6. Patrol Organisation and Records. The P/L must see to it that the Patrol log is well kept and read out at proper intervals. He must see that Troop and Patrol subs are regularly collected by the Patrol Treasurer and accurately recorded. The S.S.L. must also keep an eye on these things and see that each Patrol subscription book is audited annually. Good training for the Patrol this.

7. Keeping up to date. I suggest each Patrol takes in “The Scouter”. If it is delivered to the P/L on the 1st of each month, the last man should get it by the first of the next month. The Patrol Leader can try to get the monthly 1/- from the Patrol Treasurer. Not even the P/L will, read it all but even No. 4 can enjoy the cartoons.

THE CHOICE OF PATROL LEADERS

What are the qualities that the Scout Leader must look for before confirming the appointment of a boy as a Patrol Leader - following the recommendation of the Court of Honour. I would say this:- He MUST be a kindly boy, he MUST be straight, and he MUST be a keen Scout. He should have good manners and, if he has shown qualities of leadership, so much the better. There are lots of other qualities to hope for but these will do here. You may be surprised at my putting leadership so secondary. The point is that leadership and manners can very largely be taught and acquired. It is my “musts” that are important.
You must have a kindly boy simply because love is the essential Christian virtue. The P/L must be continually concerned for the welfare and happiness of each of his Patrol. The test comes so vividly when it is to his Patrol Leader that a boy calls when he is in trouble or in pain. I needn’t elaborate for I am sure you know what I mean. And he must be straight. His loyalty to you and to the rest of the Troop must be such that he will speak his mind fearlessly and openly. Like the rest of us he will certainly have his temptations against the precept of absolute honesty, but, although he may fail over and over again, he will be the kind that holds his head high. I needn’t emphasise that he must be a keen Scout, otherwise he will never maintain the pace. He will, of course, have his slack periods but the expectations, the joys, and the rewards of leadership are great revivers.

I hope your Patrol Leaders are well mannered - otherwise your Troop will soon become a bunch of hooligans. They must know when to stop. They must know when to call you “Sir”, “Mr Jones”, “Skipper” or that slander that no history can justify. They must jump up when you or any other adult comes into the room and generally lead the Patrol towards a more gentlemanly society. If your budding Patrol Leader falls short in this direction, you had better have a serious session with him before his investiture. As for leadership, you can help tremendously in making even the timid and physically under-developed boy into quite a passable leader. If he possesses the three “musts” I have mentioned, he will have an automatic following from every decent boy. Most of the other attributes of leadership can be learnt.

I could elaborate on this vital business of choosing your Patrol Leaders for many pages but I commend you to discuss the matter with your Brother Scouters in the District and also your existing and previous Patrol Leaders. I often do.
I personally owe more than I can say to the Scoutmaster who made me a Patrol Leader many, many years ago. Many boys are like what I was - no good at games, physically insignificant, and nobody of real importance at school. But Scouting and a patient Scoutmaster gave me my chance. A Scoutmaster should never forget this. Much more recently I have been privileged to see a number of young men receive great benefit from being trusted as Patrol Leaders. They have subsequently shown that they wish to serve our Movement further by applying for warrants either in the Boy Scout Troop or in the Pack. They seem to have absorbed very wonderfully that philosophy of life which proclaims that through hard ways and through service one finds true happiness. And, best of all it seems to me, they seem to have inherited a far greater sympathy for those who are in trouble and who are less favoured than they.

It is just another case of casting your bread upon the waters, and I trust that every one of you who is taking the trouble to read this little book will soon experience this refreshing and humbling joy.
RIGHT from the very start of your Troop let it be clear beyond all shadow of doubt that if any fellow wants to join the Senior Scouts in your Troop and has not yet passed his 1st Class Badge, then he had better get his skates on and pass it in double quick time. On no account stand any nonsense. Nowadays the 1st class tests are designed for the boy between 13 and 14½ and they should present no difficulty whatsoever to the 15-year-old if he really gets down to it and quits acting like a kid.

I know perfectly well that a great many chaps have not got their 1st Class badge when we get them, and very often it is not really their fault. So don’t criticise them. Don’t pour scorn on them. Don’t show them up in front of others. It is not all that serious and the boys themselves, the Patrol Leaders, and you can remedy this state of things in a matter of weeks - very often in a matter of days. Thus the attitude is essentially like this: “You haven’t got your 1st class yet?

Well, we’ll soon sort that out. In the Seniors we soon get that sort of thing done.” You are kindly, reassuring, but quite definite.

All the same, just HOW are you going to get the blighter first class reasonably quickly, but without making the thing easier than it should be? The problem may come to you in a variety of ways depending on the number of boys and the proportion first class. First of all, let us presume you have the first six boys I mentioned in Chapter 2 and that none has the 1st class badge although some have passed some tests and some have passed others. In a case like this, when you are all starting afresh, I would get them to work out

“How are you going to get the blighter first class.”
a series of programmes for two months which will embrace the whole badge. You will decide to make it great fun, you will strenuously keep to that programme so that each fellow will pass the tests he needs as and when provided in the programme. I needn’t tell you that the difficult thing is to keep the blighters to the programme they have made. But after all, that is what you are there for.

I always like to have a target clearly before me, so I would immediately prepare a chart. I would get the Patrol Leaders to do the same, and each boy, of course, will have his 1st class card to record his progress. This sort of thing is quite fundamental, and I cannot stress it too strongly. Also each boy should have a copy of the programme he has helped to prepare so that he doesn’t forget what comes next. Thus, everybody interested will know all the time whether they personally are keeping to schedule. Jolly good training this and an excellent introduction to more adult Scouting. Now for this chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repss &amp; Cdi.</th>
<th>Robin</th>
<th>David</th>
<th>Martin</th>
<th>Peter</th>
<th>Robert</th>
<th>Jim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 nights camp</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 emergencies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandaging</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
<td>12.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming</td>
<td>13.10.56</td>
<td>13.10.56</td>
<td>13.10.56</td>
<td>27.10.56</td>
<td>13.10.56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacking</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>03.11.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimation</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>03.11.56</td>
<td>03.11.56</td>
<td>03.11.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knots &amp; Splices</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
<td>26.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axemanship</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>03.11.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
<td>20.10.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date 1st Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(You may be interested in analysing these dates which cover one month’s progress. They are not just stuck in anyhow!)

I cannot possibly give you a cut and dried specimen programme to suit your particular bunch for the simple reason that there are so many combinations possible. But you know what each boy has to do, the standard of his previous training, his intelligence, his keenness, the time available, and the kind of background in which your Troop exists. Only you and your young ruffians can prepare a happy, wholesome balanced, indoor/outdoor, strenuous, jolly, exhilarating and satisfying programme, and all I can do in a book like this is to give the odd clue as to the attitude and standard you should adopt towards the various tests. Let us therefore examine them one by one. But before we do so, may I make one important point that covers the lot? These activities comprising the 1st class badge are the very basis of our Senior Scout training, and you and the Troop will be returning to them time and time again all through the three years of the Senior Scout training. Therefore do not seek at this stage to insist on a standard you would expect of a senior boy who has been in the Troop say six or nine months. That will come. You will have plenty of time and scope for a vast raising of standard and interest as the Bushman’s Thong and the Queen’s Scout badges are tackled and by the ordinary methods of Senior Scout training, to which I refer in detail in the next two chapters. So now let us have a quick look at these 1st class tests.

Re-pass 2nd Class. If you have just one or two boys to instruct and test in this, I suggest that a two hour session at your home will best conclude the matter. Devise lots of enterprising tests on the Tenderfoot and 2nd class subjects. This will probably mean another two hours for you before hand, but the result should be fun. You might well bring in your leading boy to lend a hand. If the whole lot need retesting, devote a whole evening - no more should be necessary - and have a really hectic and exciting night of it. Tick off the various tests against each boy’s name as he does them to your satisfaction. They will go off home with a tremendous sense of achievement. You will then have started well.
Whether you include cooking in this re-pass series depends entirely on circumstances, and the decision must be yours.

_Ten Nights Camping._ This will mostly have been done but if some camping nights are still needed by one or two of the boys they had better get off at the week-end as soon as possible. If, however, you are starting this in November you may well be up against a problem because most parents are not too keen on winter camping. In such a case I recommend the boy passing all the other tests and these will more than cover the Initial Test unless the journey has still to be done. Let him do the journey required by the Initial Test, then invest him as a Senior Scout. He should be a First Class Scout very soon after Easter.

_Emergencies, Bleeding, Fractures, and Shock._ These are of vital importance and provide the very best type of material for a week-night or week-end programme. Incidentally this holds good right through the Senior Scout training. So for four weeks devise two emergencies each evening, each taking about 30 minutes. Then you can do the thing thoroughly. Fire, drowning, etc., will be four of these, and the other four will involve the other bits of first-aid. Doubtless all will bring in “shock”, the treatment for which cannot be practised too often. How about testing all this at the weekend? There will then be daylight and adequate time to attend to all the details properly. Warn the boys a month in advance, stress the importance of the test, and they will be there. I shall be describing these things in far greater detail in Chapter 6, and I would remind you again not to demand at this stage the standard hoped for and expected then.
Swimming. As we all know, this test is either dead easy or a veritable stumbling block. All that concerns us here is the latter. Never allow a boy to walk round this obstacle unless there is a clear medical reason. But do not hold up investing a fellow if it is unfortunately obvious that this test is going to take some considerable time. Get him through all the rest of the 1st Class tests, thus covering the Initial Test, and then invest him. But don’t stop there. It is now the duty of every boy in the Troop to help this you man to swim 50 yards. I have had lots of trouble with one or two boys in this connection and I am now convinced that corporate action has much to recommend it. is a demonstration of real interest, it is kindly, and the whole Troop celebrates when at last the 50 yards have been conquered. The Scout Leader’s interest is also great value. You see, the whole trouble is usually a lack confidence, and, if the boy’s Scout Leader really expects him to pass within a month, the boy has an increased urge to do so.

Tracking. This can be a fascinating business for we are detectives at heart. Tackle it from that angle and let each man in the Troop be murdered in a sand-pit in turn - one night until ideas run out. No trouble here - just fun and much very good training.

“We are all detectives at heart.”

Trees and Birds. I reckon each fellow can find out the facts of this test on his own. You decide the date of test - say in three weeks’ time - and see what happens. There is a splendid exception to this. If you are (or someone you know is) an enthusiastic naturalist, then here is a wonderful chance to infuse enthusiasm and interest in the world of nature among the Scouts. If presented so that they can understand, and if given the opportunity of doing some bird watching themselves, this introduction to a fascinating hobby may give immeasurable pleasure to one or two boys for years to come.
Estimation. Someone (why not one of the boys?) must show the various methods, and then time must be provided in Troop meeting for actual practice and experiment. It can be quite fun as long as there is not too much of it.

Knotting and Splicing. The sheer-lashing, the fireman’s chair knot, the manharness knot, and the rolling hitch should be demonstrated and practised one evening, revised and put to practical use the next, and tested thoroughly the week after that. The back and eye splices can be demonstrated one evening - and here is the moment to get the Troop to make their own toggle ropes. Either issue lengths of rope 10 feet long or tell the boys to get suitable rope themselves and tell them that by next week they have to put a back splice on one end and an eye splice on the other. In this way the whole Troop obtains that indispensable item of gear and kit - the toggle rope. It is worn round the waist on top of the anorak at each Troop meeting and on all hikes. This definitely Senior Scout equipment is longed for by each Boy Scout, and is, in my opinion, a must for every Senior Scout. You will not find anything in P.O.R. about this - it is purely my own idea on the subject.

Axemanship. Felling trees is great fun, but is seldom possible just when you want it. Even logging practice is not that easy to obtain outside a summer camp or a permanent campsite. It is sometimes possible, however, that the boys will have heard of fallen or felled trees that need logging up and it is worth a try. But please be under no illusions as to the axemanship efficiency of the average Boy Scout or Senior Scout. Generally speaking it is as bad as the state of Troop and personal axes - which is just dreadful. So give full and careful instruction, presume abysmal ignorance and take no chances.

Map Reading. Don’t give out an edict whereby everybody has to learn all the conventional signs by a week hence. They could do it easily enough, but it smacks too much like School. I find the best way to foster real interest in map reading is to relate maps to actual photos. I often use the Kingussie 1" 0.S. Map alongside the
Cairngorm section of the Scottish Mountaineers’ Handbook, and there are lots of similar ways of doing this sort of thing which will readily come to your mind. Thus you will foster an interest in maps so that they become one of the essential items of Senior Scout equipment. One other thought. Map reading is best taught individually - one fellow showing another. And you test in the same way - one chap at a time. I need about half an hour for each boy and can easily take a whole hour if there is the time. Of course, I usually reckon to teach as much as I test. When I have finished - whether or not I have passed him - I find it a good idea to show the Scout some foreign maps - perhaps one relating to the next expedition contemplated by the Troop.

**Compass.** All I need say here is to emphasise that the compass is essentially an out-of-doors instrument and that you must confine its use to practical Scouting. In open country you can set the boys a journey consisting of several legs of differing compass direction and they can tell you later where they actually come to by giving you the map grid reference. Conversely in towns they can set out on a journey along a series of specified roads and report to you the changes in direction involved. They had better work in degrees in this case. So much for compass work, which will figure quite largely in your subsequent Senior Scout activities. Just give them a start at this stage. It is a matter of minutes to show them how to find direction by watch and sun and also by the pole Star. I suggest you leave until later in their training how to use the other stars and also the moon.

**The Journey.** This is usually set by the District Commissioner, his deputy, and, if you are doing all this the summer, there should be no problems. If, however, it is midwinter, you may find considerable parental unwillingness to permit camping. If so, be content with the less comprehensive section (3) of the Initial Test, invest the boy thereafter, and conclude the 1st class journey as soon as possible in the spring.
In Conclusion. These are just brief hints, but I hope they have emphasised that, except for the tests in swimming, ramping and the journey, there should be no real difficulty in the whole of the Troop, or a group of two or three boys, or just one single boy tackling the 1st class badge sensibly, with fun and enjoyment, in the course of two months. So get the boys together, plan with them the whole operation, and keep them up to the programme agreed to. This will not only result in “Everybody 1st Class” but will give practical proof of the solidarity of the Troop and that success always results when enthusiasm, organisation and leadership work in hand. Having got everybody first class - or as near makes no difference - you will then be ready to tackle the Senior Scout training, which is the finest yet devised by any youth organisation in any country. So on you go with increasing confidence.
Chapter 5

“I WANT TO WEAR THE
BUSHMAN’S THONG!”

THIS should be the emphatic exclamation of every Senior Scout immediately after his investiture and there shouldn’t be anything “airy-fairy” about it. It should be a perfectly clear target and recognised as being within the capacity of every Senior Scout. It is the Scouter’s duty to see that each Patrol Leader puts this vital idea to every new fellow and the Scouter himself must put his whole weight into the scales - all 15 stone of it.

You see, badges comprising the Bushman’s Thong and Queen’s Scout badge are the essentials of Senior Scoutcraft training. (Please note that I seek to distinguish between “Scoutcraft”, which term embraces our techniques, and “Scouting”, which I like to think is the continual application of the Scout Law.) The Troop which takes bits here and bits there of our training without logical sequence is not likely to get anywhere worthwhile in Scouting. I shall discuss this matter in much greater detail in Chapter 11. This proficiency badge training scheme has been invented to help us Scout Leaders, and personally I base the whole of our training around it. This saves me masses of thinking and lots of time. It is not, therefore, just the right thing to do but the easiest way of running the show. I never seek unnecessary labour. As far as the boys are concerned, I consider that any boy who wants to be a Senior Scout and says he is not interested in gaining the Bushman’s Thong or the Queen’s Scout badge is mentally muddled. It is time his Scout Leader should really tell him what Scouting should mean to the older boy - all about the fun, the challenge, and the inspiration. This is essentially the Scout Leader’s job. Incidentally, if he comes out with the highfalutin’ stuff of doing the training but never minding about the badges, accept this quite happily. Ten to one he will soon change his mind.
So many people think that the Bushman’s Thong is for Grammar School boys only. This is plain rubbish. It can, in fact, be successfully earned without writing a word. I do not advocate this, of course, for the normal boy, but it is possible just the same. Please, therefore, study the conditions yourself and make quite sure that the rest of the Troop are equally familiar with them. To save you looking up *P.O.R.* at this stage I now quote Rule 434:-

“Before being awarded the Bushman’s Thong, a leather thong worn on the right shoulder, a Scout must:-

(1) hold the 1st Class badge, the Venturer Badge, and two of the following badges:– Astronomer, Camp Warden, Forester, Hiker, Master Cook, Meteorologist, Naturalist, Senior Pioneer, Tracker. A Scout may not count both the Astronomer and Meteorologist badges to qualify for the Thong.
I suggest we examine each of these badges in turn.

**VENTURER BADGE**

This is, in my opinion, a magnificent badge, and the H.Q. pundits are to be congratulated on its composition. It is a brilliant mixture of the difficult and the relatively easy, and no amount of last minute preparation will get a fellow anywhere. Training in its four parts with the various sub-divisions can be spread over many months and, to my mind, the testing can likewise be done in instalments.

Part 1 of the Venturer Badge reads like this:-

“Complete an adventure journey as a member of a Patrol in which he shall play a leading part. The journey, which may be short in length, must include at least five incidents such as rescues from fire or heights, compass work, night work, decoding. Water incidents to be included by Sea Scout Troops.

Preparation for this test gives you material for countless programmes on a summer or even a winter evening. Resource training - and that is what it amounts to - can be of enormous assistance to every boy in countless and unexpected ways. It develops power of command because every boy needs lots of practice and experience before he learns to give the right orders to meet an emergency and until he is sufficiently sure of himself to give his orders in such a way as demand instant compliance. It ensures that he can fit himself into a team and learn to obey immediately the orders of the boy temporarily chosen to be the leader. It also helps to teach him that ethic of Society whereby a team properly led and itself well disciplined can accomplish things completely impossible to an unorganised group of well-meaning individuals. Last night a young man came to tell me about his
experiences at a W.O.S.B. and he was emphatic in his gratitude to the resource training he received in the Scouts. This was proved time and time again during the last War, and it is interesting to realise that it still holds good to-day. If you wish further instance of this, just read recommendation (f) of Working Party “D” in the report “Citizens of Tomorrow” published under the auspices of King George’s Jubilee Trust.

These are the exact words used:-

“Lack of self-confidence and initiative are the predominant deficiencies in the character of young men on joining the Services. The development of character and stamina is of much greater importance, both to the Nation and to the Services, than the attainment of an elementary efficiency in drill and weapon training. Therefore, the Cadet Organisations of the different services should unite in organising their training on the lines of the Scout and Outward Bound Movements. It is recommended that the Ministry of Defence should appoint a Committee with representatives of the Cadet Organisations, the Scout Movement, and the Outward Bound Trust to decide how Cadet training can be more closely related to the Senior Scout and Outward Bound systems. In this connection it is considered that the Services should examine the possibility of giving some official recognition to those reaching an agreed standard before call-up.”

It is interesting to note that the people who made this recommendation include an Admiral, a General, a Marshal of the Royal Air Force and several well-known men women in differing walks of life. So may that be some encouragement for you to persevere in your efforts to make our Venturer Badge really effective.

“Include an Admiral, a General, a Marshal of the Royal Air Force.”
But what a game it is to organise a suitable test. Time and trouble are needed in the planning, and quite a large number of people need to be roped in to look after the various incidents. Therefore it is very important that each boy should have had lots and lots of incidents with which to cope before he tries his hand at the test. Let the test be a real climax - not something attempted just to see whether he is lucky enough to pass. The problems of working out these incidents and those pertaining to first-aid are the particular job of the Scouter. He may leave much of the running of the Troop to the boys but resource training as tested in Part 1 of the Venturer Badge and first-aid training as tested in the Ambulance Badge are responsibilities which the Scouter should not seek to delegate.

Over the years I have amassed a large number of “incidents” suitable for use in Venturer Badge Part 1, but, as most of you will know only too well, they all run very much to a pattern. Thus it will be sufficient if I describe very briefly the eight incidents which comprised a recent test I ran. The actual journey was in a figure-of-eight course and four incidents were spaced over each loop. Total about 10 miles. Eight Patrols of four Seniors each attempted the test, and each boy was, therefore, P/L twice during the journey because they changed being P/L every time an incident was encountered. The whole exercise was worked out very carefully and looked lovely on paper. The wonderful thing was that it worked out amazingly well in practice. We started about 04.30 and the whole thing was over by 11.00 before most people were about on the roads to question our sanity. Even so, we advised the police just in case some public-spirited person should dial 999 in the interests of public safety and communal well-being. It need not be in the middle of the night, of course, but we often like doing things that way.

Incident 1. This was to escape over an electric fence about 5 feet high. Easy enough until you come to the last man. Incident 2 was the rescue of an injured paratrooper who had stuck up a tree. He only had two relatively minor injuries - two broken ribs and a
broken forearm - because any more serious injury takes a very long
time to attend to properly.

And they must do these things really well. Otherwise we must fail
them. Incident 3 was an ordinary first-aid incident featuring an axe
and much make-up and other “Casualty Union” props. Incident 4
provided a dangerous lunatic up a tree and they had lots of fun
trying to get him to come down.

Then Incident 5 involved the solving of a code message. They
found their sixth when they met a foreigner who only spoke French
and German and who wanted to get to the nearest Police Station as
quickly as possible. No. 7 set them a detective problem in solving
what appeared at first sight to be just another car crash but which
on further investigation produced a body, a dagger, and lots of
blood. Incident 8 required the capture of a convict on the run who
had been seen asleep in a wood (map reference given). Careful
stalking was needed to get near without waking him and thereafter
strength and rope were required. Two Scouters or Rovers were in
charge of each incident and as each Patrol approached they were
asked who was the P/L - unless, of course the element of surprise
was necessary.

Pointing was simple. The examiners put this question to
themselves with regard to each fellow- “On his showing at this
incident should he wear the Venturer Badge?” The answer had to
be “Yes” or “No” or “Not sure”. These answers were recorded on
paper at the time and handed to later. Special attention was always
given to the function required of each boy - leadership and power
of command if P L, quick carrying out of orders by the others, and
the technical efficiency of all. At the end of the whole show I
assembled all the reports received for each boy and, unless there
were several “Not sure” votes, I compared the “Yes” votes with the
“No” votes and took the majority opinion. As this involved the
opinion of at least 16 different people I think the boys had a fair
deal. Out of the 32 candidates I had to make the final decision in
only two cases. It may interest you to know that 21 passed on this
occasion and the usual certificates were issued before the boys went home. This was done with proper ceremony and the required congratulations.

Part 2 stipulates:- Be reasonably proficient in two of the following. Each of the two must be selected from different groups, as under:-

a Boxing, fencing, wrestling, judo.
b Rowing, riding, skiing, ice-skating, roller-skating, sailing, gliding, canoeing, car-driving, and motorcycle riding,
c Swimming, diving.
d Gymnastics, tumbling.
e Rock climbing, rope-spinning, caving.
f Track athletics, field events, cross-country running.
g Rifle shooting, archery.

It is a vital part of a Scout’s development that he should be encouraged to cultivate several skills right outside the limits of Scoutcraft proper. The list above is quite diverse and most boys will have little difficulty in choosing two skills at which they are either efficient already or keen to learn. Let them get on with this themselves, and it will usually be sufficient if you confine yourself to finding the requisite examiners to test their efficiency when the time comes.

I am often asked what standards should be demanded, and, quite frankly, I can never give a really satisfactory answer. It all depends on the fellow in question and the effort he is putting into it. It also depends on which sport is chosen. The question of enjoyment, I think, also comes into it. For instance, if a fellow takes swimming as one of his skills he should not merely be able to swim but be “happy in the water” - if you get my meaning. He will like going to the swimming baths and is quite at home in that sort of company. He will, doubtless, be able to tell you all about current
swimming records and the champions who made them. In short, it is largely a question of keenness, and I am quite content to leave it at that.

Part 3 enumerates five agility tests, and the Scout has to pass three of them. Here they are

(a) Climb a tree to the height of 30 feet from the ground.
(b) Vault a fence two-thirds his own height.
(c) Throw a 60-foot line to fall between two pegs four feet apart at a distance of 50 feet, twice out of every three times.
(d) Swim 20 yards wearing clothes.
(e) Climb a rope to a height of 15 feet from the ground.

Most of your young men will pass all these tests without any trouble and, as they are all questions of fact, they are easy to test. I usually find it convenient to have these tests after the boys have completed the “Incident” journey for Part 1. While I am attending to the paper work and making out the certificates for Part 1, the remainder of the Testing Team will get busy on Part 3 and issue partial certificates as they go along.

Part 4 deals with what is now generally called the “Venturer Journey”. Here are the conditions:

(4) Make a Journey of at least 20 miles on foot or by boat, with not more than two other Scouts. Route must be one with which the Scout is not familiar and should, if possible, include stiff country. Sleep out, using only kit carried in rucsac. Maximum weight 30 lb., which must include food.

The Examiner may set the candidate one or two tasks which require a specific report but no general log of the journey is required.
The Journey must be such as will constitute a definite test of determination, initiative and self-reliance.

This Section of the Badge can form a magnificent climax to the Bushman’s Thong training and, just as the first class journey is taken last in that series of tests, it may well be a good idea for the boy to make this his final test for the Bushman’s Thong. The difficulty for most of us, of course, is to find stiff country. It is hardly valid to expect boys to wait until the summer expedition before taking this test - and anyway many summer expeditions as we know them are likely to be in country where it is really far too risky to allow a party of as few as three boys without an adult to attempt the kind of journey intended.

This is indeed quite a difficult problem and a certain amount of artificiality may regrettably be necessary. In the first edition of this book I gave in considerable detail a type of testing I had found satisfactory in the relatively easy countryside of Hertfordshire. I see no point in giving it again because, after all, it was just one man’s idea of a test and one which I have since extensively altered.

If you haven’t got mountains, hills and moors available locally and it is too expensive to send your boys to them, then you must just “inject” difficulties somehow or another. Here are a few suggestions:-

1. You can make the distance longer than 20 miles if the countryside is really easy - say, 15 miles each day.

2. Insist on a considerable part of the journey being done at night when the moon is in the first quarter.

3. Prohibit primus stoves and delete from the menu all sausages, tinned foods, pre-cooked foods, sandwiches made by Mum, etc.

4. Insist on pukka “backwoods” cooking.
5. Let the Examiner arrange for their camp to be visited while they sleep, give orders for an immediate evacuation to a place at least two miles away and time the whole escapade.

I hope these five suggestions will give an adequate start to your thinking so that your boys may really be “stretched”, but pray do not go to extremes - by, for instance, combining all my five suggestions on two luckless perishers!

Now a word about reports and logs. You will note that no general log of the journey is required. The Examiner may set each boy an individual task to be completed during the journey and to require the boy to report to him about it when he comes home. This report can be either written or verbal whichever is the more suitable. I often find a verbal report much more searching than merely a written one.

One final word about the “Venturer Journey”. This hike must be fun. I don’t mean funny. It can be good fun at the same time a real hard slog. A tame hike bores while a challenging one gives real satisfaction and makes the badge worth wearing. We must see that our Scouts are proud of their badges.

I have taken a great deal of trouble to give illustrations in training for and testing this badge, and I wish to emphasise once more that these ideas are not official and that there are many other ways of tackling the various activities envisaged. This “many sidedness” of the badge adds greatly to its attractiveness and to its usefulness. I hope you all have many happy hours in giving the Troop this resource training which it so badly needs and which encourages the qualities of initiative, stamina, and self-discipline.
ASTRONOMER BADGE

(1) Know the chief stars and constellations visible in his latitude and understand how to express technically the position of any particular star at any given time.

(2) Be able to tell the time by the stars.

(3) Know what is meant by:- the Galactic system, star clusters.

(4) Make a simple astronomical model to illustrate some feature of the solar system.

(5) Discuss the instruments used and the work carried on in an observatory. Know the principal observatories of the world, their situations and natural advantages, the special work undertaken by any of them and some details of their telescopes.

This does tend to be rather a Grammar School type of badge, but it does lend itself to a series of badge classes which any Scout can absorb - say eight evenings at 25 minutes each - which is just about as much as any Senior Scout can apply himself to at that time of night - plus two evenings for revision and preliminary testing. In my opinion every Senior Scout should have some knowledge of astronomy, so I am very keen to have some sort of badge class (albeit abridged) every other winter whether or not the actual badge is linked with it. I find the trouble is to find the right type of Instructor. Now and again one of the older Seniors can do this.

Here again the influence of the Scouter is vital. Here is a chance to open wide the mind of a growing boy to the immeasurable distances of our universe, the consequent wonder of man’s place in it, and, from that, the thrill of our access to our God. I, for one, feel that this is a medium cannot afford to neglect. It may lead to so many adventure in thought and reflection.
CAMP WARDEN BADGE

Camp Warden
(1) Pass or have passed the Camper badge.

(2) Have camped 10 nights since reaching the age of 15.

(3) Camp for the weekend at a site (other than the one visited under (6)) and report on the differences, advantages and disadvantage of this site, i.e., ground, soil, trees, aspect and general suitability as camp site.

(4) Show practical knowledge of the subjects covered in “Camping Standards” and apply that knowledge in planning a camp for at least three Patrols, from finding the site to the return home.

(5) Make a tent, ground sheet, rucksac or other similar article a camp equipment.

(6) Have helped satisfactorily at a permanent camp-site for not less than six nights, or, where this is not possible, have taken sole charge of a camp for a week-end, such camp to have not less than eight campers and to be visited by the Examiner.

Camper
(1) Know what are the normal requirements in regard to:
   (a) Personal kit for a week’s camp.
   (b) Personal kit for a week-end hike or cruise.
   (e) The equipment and rations and menu for a week-end Patrol camp or cruise (seven Scouts).

Demonstrate the packing of his personal kit in (b) in rucsac or kitbag.

(2) Either know the principal points to look for when selecting Patrol or Troop camp site, and describe with rough plan how he would lay out a Patrol camp with reference to tent, kitchen,
sanitation, etc.: or know how to select an anchorage, mooring or berth for: a rowing or sailing vessel or a sea-going vessel.

(3) Have a knowledge of “Camping Standards”.

(4) Make and show the following knots in use: Slip Reef, Double Sheet Bend, Figure of Eight, Bowline on Bight and Manharness Hitch Pitch, strike, pack and know how to take care of a Patrol tent, an construct a camp latrine. Show that he can carry out simple ten repairs.

(5) While living in camp cook all meals for himself for 24 hours the satisfaction of the Examiner or a Scouter. While in camp he must make satisfactory arrangements for storing of food and disposal o refuse.

(6) Have camped under canvas with a Troop or Patrol for a total a not less than 15 nights.

This is a grand badge and one which every Senior Scout can pass whatever his intellectual abilities may be. He has first to pass the under 15 Camper Badge, which tests the various camping skills practised in the Boy Scout Troop. We like to think that every Senior is qualified to pass this section as a matter of course, but I am afraid this is not always so and in that case we in the Senior Troop must quickly make up for lost time.

“Possible Scoutmastership.”

Sections (3) and (6) of the senior badge presume some experience at the local permanent camping site together with a visit to another site for comparison purposes. All this is jolly good Scouting experience and helps to eradicate parochialism. The report required for the badge makes the boy compare the two sites item by item in an orderly manner - all very good training.
Part (4) is an advance in similar tests in the junior badge and makes the young man think in terms of larger numbers - an interesting approach towards possible Scoutmaster-ship, which may well stir ambition in that field of service.

Part (5) is practical and is therefore vital. In “Mid Moor and Mountain” Jim Westwood gives all sorts of information on making just about every item of camping equipment.

This is not really a difficult badge to pass but it does require perseverance, and that is a quality somewhat at a premium these days. I therefore commend this badge very strongly to all Scout Leaders and Senior Scouts. It is not widely attempted and I sincerely hope this may soon be altered.

FORESTER BADGE

(1) Be able to identify, in summer and in winter, 20 varieties of trees. Know their uses as timber and fuel and be able to recognise them from a distance.

(2) Have a general knowledge of the structure of a tree and how it feeds, breathes and makes timber.

(3) Know the dangers to which trees and woods may be exposed, i.e., fire, snow, frost, insects, diseases and animals. Discuss the methods of combating these dangers.

(4) Prepare soil and successfully transplant a young tree (not a seedling). Know how to deal with wounds in growing trees.

(5) Know how to select an axe, name the parts, how to take care of it and the safety rules of axemanship.

(6) Know how to use a felling axe in felling and logging up. Use a cross-cut saw and wedges.
(7) Demonstrate the general principles of felling, trimming, logging up, moving and stacking timber, and calculate the amount of useful timber in a given tree.

This is rather a special sort of badge and is tackled by only a minority of Senior Scouts. I think this is inevitable simply because it is not easy to get competent instructors or to obtain the requisite practical experience if the badge is to be really worthwhile. At some Technical Schools and Colleges, however, this subject is now well covered and we Scout Leaders should be careful to encourage the Senior Scout who is at such a School or College if he comes along and suggests he takes the Forester Badge as one of his Bushman’s Thong badges. Just because you and I are completely ignorant in these matters, we have to be very careful that we do not ignore the possibilities of encouraging this sort of thing. We shall, of course, be dependent on the Schoolmaster to act as an Examiner and he must be carefully briefed as to what exactly is required. The test must be neither too easy nor too difficult and you must ensure that it really is a practical effort and not just book knowledge.

Hiker Badge

(1) Demonstrate methods of packing and carrying a complete hiking kit for a 24-hours’ hike, not to weigh more than 30 lb. including the food. Be prepared to justify his choice of kit.

(2) Take part in three hikes, during each of which kit is carried and the Scout sleeps out; distance of two hikes to be at least 10 miles each; distance of the other to be not less than 30 miles, with 2 nights camping Out. Logs of high standard to he produced.

(3) Select a route for a 15-mile hike from a 1-inch O.S. map, not necessarily of his own district, giving reasons for his choice of route.
(4) From a map select three areas of 1-mile square, approximately when a good hike camp site should be possible, giving reasons for choice of the areas.

(5) Make an article of hiking kit, such as tent, sleeping bag, camp fire blanket, rucsac or a bag or other container in which to pack billy, food or toilet necessaries, etc.

(6) Show a knowledge of personal hygiene and the care of feet and footgear.

This is now one of the Bushman’s Thong Badges and, as you will see from the conditions, I hope S.S.L.s will encourage every one of their Seniors to qualify for it. Camping, hiking and exploring - especially those impromptu camps and hikes arranged by two or three Seniors on their own - are the essence of good Scouting and, as I will emphasise in the last chapter of this book, we Scouters need to encourage this love of camping much more than we do. Let us therefore examine the various conditions of this Badge so as to ascertain how best to use this added incentive.

Section (1) concerns kit lists and, as you all know, this is a subject about which Scouts and Scouters are never tired of arguing. The point here is twofold. Firstly the Scout has to compile his own “skilled” list derived from first-hand experience. Secondly he must know how to pack it in his rucsac. I am purposely refraining from printing my own kit list with weights and I hope you will follow my example. Our job here is to teach, not to demonstrate. So let each Senior prepare his own list with each item weighed to the nearest half-ounce. Then - and only then - you make your comment and give your advice. He may disregard it and be prepared to justify his choice to the Examiner as laid down in Section I of this Badge.

Section (2) is the vital one, of course. The minimum is three hikes, but, as all must be properly logged, I recommend that one or two trial hikes be attempted first so that the boy may gain that degree
of “know-how” which will give him most valuable confidence before he starts to qualify for the Badge. Don’t allow boys to “have a bash” just in case they may pass the Examiner. This makes nonsense of our Badge system and is resented by the keen and skilled Scout who really is proud about his standards and experience.

Sections (3) and (4) are primarily map-reading tests and also embrace lots and lots of items of camping and hiking knowledge only gained by experience. The inference is obvious.

Section (5) enumerates various items of camping gear and equipment and the Scout is required to make one of them. Some are relatively easy, others like tents and sleeping bags very difficult indeed. I hope Examiners will not be content with the minimum - say a bag to hold his soap and toothbrush.

Dare I say that Section (6) speaks for itself? Only from experience can a boy hope to convince the Examiner that he knows his stuff.

In conclusion I would say that this Hiker Badge is one of those Badges which should be examined at one sitting. I suggest that the procedure should be for the boy to do all the hikes and then submit the logs to the Examiner. When the latter has read them carefully he will then meet the boy who will bring his home-made article of camping gear with him. After questions about his hikes resulting from reading the logs, the Examiner will proceed to test the boy in the other Sections and award the Badge or not as he feels fit. In this way the theory sections (1, 3, 4 and 6) are examined after the practical ones (2 and 5) have been attempted and as a result of which, the experience of the Scout is reasonably wide.
MASTER COOK’S BADGE

(1) Cook for a Patrol, both in camp (open fire and camp oven) and indoors (any type of stove), including roasting, boiling, frying and the making of bread, cakes, puddings, drinks and sauces. Prepare and serve food punctually and hot, following the niceties of good manners. Demonstrate carving.

(2) Know how to buy food and draw up priced and dietetically sound menus to include quantities required for a camp of a week’s duration for at least two Patrols of five Scouts each. A limit for the cost of catering will be laid down by the Examiner.

(3) Know how to prepare a hot meal (two courses) and a hot drink, without utensils except a billy.

METEOROLOGIST BADGE

Meteorologist

(1) Pass or have passed para. (3) and (4) of the Weatherman badge.

(2) Keep, from his own personal observations, a daily record of the weather for one month (as for Weatherman badge but for all headings).

(3) Explain the purposes and principles of the simple thermometer, wet and dry-bulb thermometer(s), barometer, anemometer.

(4) Know how synoptic weather maps are produced and be able to understand a simplified version of such a map, such as is printed in a newspaper or shown on television.

(5) Understand the following :- relative humidity, dewpoint, isobar, milibar, isotherm, Buys-Ballot’s law, cold front, warm front, and illustrate any explanation with diagrams.

(6) Construct a wind-vane, and a simple rain-gauge.
Weatherman

(1) Keep from his own observations a daily record of the weather for one month, using Beaufort letters and symbols, and including at least four of the following:-

- Wind force and direction.
- Cloud type and amount.
- Weather (using Beaufort letters).
- Temperature.
- Pressure.
- Rainfall.

(2) Construct a simple rain-gauge and a wind-vane and know where to set up these instruments to obtain reliable records.

(3) Be able to explain the formation of dew, hoarfrost, fog and rime.

(4) Be able to name and describe briefly three different ways in which clouds are formed.

(5) Know at least two natural signs foretelling fine weather and two foretelling bad weather.

Only quite exceptionally is this a suitable badge to be tackled by a badge class organised under Scout auspices. It is, thus, a badge best attempted by the boy himself and in his own way. This, incidentally, is a jolly good idea for it is never a good thing to organise too much for these young men and there is already a tendency for us to hand too much out on a plate. It is true that the observations and data to be logged require an access to instruments only very occasionally to be found in a Scout’s home, but School co-operation can be invaluable. I myself was very keen on “Met.” when I was at school, and I had no difficulty in getting permission from the Senior Science Master to take the necessary readings every day. My experience to-day is that similar facilities are readily granted to any keen boy, and the study of weather is obviously a very Scout like and backwoodsman attribute and is to
be encouraged. This badge is generally thought to be beyond the capabilities of most boys, and this is a pity. Certainly it is not easy, and it does require persistence and care, but surely these are just the qualities we Scouters wish to inculcate. I strongly recommend that we encourage the study of meteorology among our boys.

**NATURALIST BADGE**

(1) Show evidence of an intelligent interest in the whole field of nature and with particular regard to one of the following:-

(a) Trees and shrubs  (e) Wild animals (native)
(b) Wild flowers  (f) Ferns or grasses
(c) Bird life  (g) Seashore or pond life
(d) Butterflies or moths or other insects  (h) Rocks or fossils

and produce collections, specimens, log-books, etc., as the pursuit may warrant.

(2) Discuss with the Examiner his observations and the sources of information (museums, etc.) he may have used.

All my remarks for the Forester Badge apply to this one but there is more to be said because of the greater field covered. Boys - often from quite an early age - become interested in one or other of the various facets of natural history. This is usually at the instance of an enthusiastic parent or schoolmaster and the wise Scout Leader will add his own special encouragement to any such hobby. This may well give the boy a quite unexpected prestige - especially if his knowledge of the subject results in the almost automatic passing of so specialist a badge as the Naturalist Badge.
(1) Pass or have passed the Hiker or Master Canoeist badge.

(2) Take part in an expedition with not less than two and not more than five other Scouts. The expedition may be on foot, by cycle, kayak or pulling dinghy, or on horseback.

The expedition must be planned to extend over at least 4 consecutive days and at least three nights must be spent away from home under canvas, rough shelter or in the open. All necessary equipment and food must be taken and all meals be prepared by members of the party.

All Scouts in the party will take an equal part in the planning arrangements before and during the expedition, but it is not necessary that all participants should be under test.

A log of the expedition must be kept by each member of the party, having previously agreed between themselves a different “emphasis” for each log - e.g., weather, geography, history, architecture, archaeology, botany, ornithology.

The route and special log subjects must have the prior approval of the Examiner.

The expedition on foot will cover at least 50 miles in wild country, which can be found in the British Isles only in the Peak District, the Welsh Mountains, the Pennines and Cheviots, the North Yorkshire Moors, Dartmoor, Exmoor, the Lake District, mountainous areas in Northern Ireland and large areas of Scotland. Expeditions may also take place outside the U.K. The three nights will be spent in different camp sites.
An expedition by water will cover at least 50 miles and the log will cover such points as the state of the river, condition of banks, obstructions to navigation, etc.

An expedition by cycle will cover at least 200 miles as far as possible off Class A roads.

An expedition on horseback will cover at least 120 miles in wild country, camping in three different camp sites.

An expedition, whether on foot or otherwise, must be a test of determination, courage, physical endurance and a high degree of co-operation among those taking part.

The chap who gains this badge is pretty sure to be - technically at least - a pretty competent Scout. Not only has he satisfied the Hiker Badge Examiner that he is a skilled and experienced hiker - accomplished in the finer points of the game - but he will also be a trusted member of a team of fellows who have attempted a really difficult journey and come through with credit.

I am glad H.Q. have joined these two facets together in one badge. There is sometimes the danger that our almost perfect light-weight camper may become a rather strange type and allow technical skill to spoil Scouting fun. On the other hand, I have seen too many Senior Scouts camp so continuously and so unnecessarily in the mode of explorers and pioneers that they have lost the camping efficiency they learned in the Boy Scout Troop. Too much of a good thing leads to fanaticism and eventual dissatisfaction. So let us welcome this badge and seek to use it to solve some of the most difficult problems which beset us Scout Leaders.

You will already have read my comments on the Hiker Badge and all I need say here in that connection is to emphasise that the two parts of this wider badge are supplementary and complementary to each other. It is not true to say that the Hiker Badge leads up to and is only a preparation for the journey required in Part II of the
Explorer Badge. Likewise it is wrong to imagine that this latter journey is just a frill - slightly more strenuous than the Venturer Badge journey.

Therefore the Senior will train very carefully for his Hiker Badge and thoroughly enjoy the hikes he will do in the course of that training. He will become a “gen” man on camping gear, on cooking, on “making do”, on making himself comfortable, and in carrying as little kit as possible. His compass will be an old and trusted friend and his practised eye will glean from a map many things hidden from the less skilled person. Furthermore, he will take pride in making a neat, factual, readable and possibly humorous log.

So far, so good, and one might suppose that once a fellow had gained his Hiker Badge just another hike will gain him his Senior Explorer Badge. Not on your life! It must be fully understood and doubly underlined that the detailed preliminary preparation which the team must unitedly accomplish is every bit as important as the actual journey itself. In so many ways the training value of the preparatory work is quite vital if our character training target is to be achieved.

You will notice that all members of the team must take part and that each has his essential responsibility - just like an Everest or Antarctic expedition in miniature. In the same way each man will have a special “interest” as far as the log is concerned. Thus before, during and after the journey the team functions. The training is obvious - especially for the chosen leader of the team.

As this journey can be done in one of five ways (on foot, cycle, kayak, pulling dinghy, horseback), it is quite impossible for me to go into detail as regards method. All I can do is to draw your attention to the final paragraph of the conditions which emphasise that this journey must be a test of determination, courage and physical endurance and a high degree of co-operation among the team. You will probably have realised that this badge is in line
with Section B of the Duke of Edinburgh’s Award and it may well be that your Education Authority may find itself able to approve some grant which will enable you to give your boys greater facilities for taking this test and showing their mettle. Let us seize every opportunity of furthering our training and making it more like the ideal B.-P. long ago had in mind. This badge involves real Senior Scouting and as we, as a Movement - especially in the Seniors - have been specialising in this kind of training for a great many years, I trust there will be a large number of Senior Explorer Badges won each year. What about your Troop?

SENIOR PIONEER BADGE

**Backwoodsman**

(1) Make a satisfactory shelter for two people, using natural materials, and sleep in it, alone or with another Scout, for at least one night.

(2) Skin and cook (without utensils) a rabbit, or cook in clay a bird at least as large as a pigeon, or clean and cook a fresh fish without utensils.

(3) Demonstrate three of the following:
   (a) Improvised methods of moving injured persons having due regard to their safety and comfort.
   (b) Climbing a tree to a height of at least 20 feet from the ground and lashing on the foundation spars of a look-out post.
   (c) Rowing a boat, paddling a canoe, or poling a punt for at least half a mile.
   (d) The construction of a sundial, or a gadget to find the True North.
   (e) Any method of purifying contaminated water and of straining muddy water.

**Senior Pioneer**

(1) Pass or have passed the Backwoodsman badge.
(2) As a member of Patrol which he shall either lead or in which he shall take a leading part, demonstrate his knowledge of:
   (a) The construction of a flag staff.
   (b) The moving of heavy weights by the use of levers and tackle.
   (c) Anchorages and sheer legs.
   (d) Raft making.
   (e) Simple and light bridge construction.
   (f) The building of an aerial runway.

(3) Make the following:- Scaffold Hitch, Water Bowline and the Spanish Bowline.

(4) Lead a Patrol in making a camp kitchen or demonstrate his ability to construct and use instructional pioneering models.

(5) Prepare a meal for himself and a companion, consisting of at least meat, two vegetables and bread, not using utensils but backwoods methods.

(6) Prove his skill in finding his way alone across unknown country, not using roads, without maps or making enquiries, to a point invisible from his start:-
   (a) by compass and by day a distance of not less than two miles;
   (b) without compass and by stars a distance of not less than one mile.

This is another splendidly practical badge and makes with the Venturer and Camp Warden Badges a really backwoodsman trio with which to qualify for the Bushman’s Thong. In Hertfordshire the County runs two courses each year. They are run at the County Training Camp - the instruction taking two week-ends and the testing another two week-ends a month or so later. Some Districts run similar courses on much the same lines. They are always great fun - especially when held in the winter, which is our usual practice.
But whether or not the County or District runs courses of instruction, there is no reason why any average-sized Troop should not run its own course. It might be allowed to use the equipment at the County Training Camp or it may gradually acquire adequate gear of its own. Pioneering is an absorbing subject and if the Boy Scout Troop has a tradition whereby the Backwoodman Badge is regularly taken by the older boys, then the wind is set fair for many happy evenings and week-ends making all sorts of improbable experiments in motion, acceleration, dynamics, and even hydrostatics.

TRACKER BADGE

Tracker
(1) Pass or have passed the Observer or Stalker badge.

(2) Recognise and explain two different characteristics in each of three different human footprints, barefoot or shod, and recognise, and explain two different characteristics in each, of three different types of simple human tracks.

(3) Solve, with reasonable accuracy, three tracking stories in sand, snow or other suitable natural material.

(4) Make six plaster casts of the tracks of birds, animals, car or cycle. All casts to be taken unaided and correctly labelled with date and place of making. Two at least to be of wild birds or animals.

(5) Lay a trail of at least half-a-mile in length containing at least four different kinds of sign made of natural materials. 40 to 60 signs to be used and the route to be over ground with which the Scout is unfamiliar. Roads may be crossed but not followed. The trail to be followed by Scouts of Second Class standard.
Stalker
(1) Demonstrate his ability to stalk and use cover: camouflage, winds, shadows and background by doing the following:-
(a) by day:-
(i) Cross half a mile of open country to approach an observer in a known position.
Or in town:-
Shadow an observer for half a mile and report his actions.
(ii) Camouflage himself against three different backgrounds, if possible under varying weather conditions.

and (b) by night:-
(i) Approach, unseen and unheard, within a reasonable distance, according to local conditions, an observer whose position is known.
(ii) Locate and pass between two observers stationed a reasonable distance apart according to conditions at the time of the test.

(2) Give proof of having stalked and studied at least four wild birds or animals in their natural state in the open by describing the results of his observations, or by producing sketches or photos which he has made.

(3) Make at least three plaster casts of the tracks of animals, one of which must be wild.

Observer
(1) In Kim’s game remember 24 out of 30 well assorted articles after one minute’s observation. Test to be performed twice running with different articles and each article to be adequately described.

(2) By hearing alone, recognise 8 out of 10 simple sounds.

(3) Follow two simple nature trails each of half a mile length and each containing between 20 and 30 signs made of natural material. Tests to be performed over ground with which the Scout is unfamiliar and, if possible, in varying weather conditions.
(4) Give an accurate account of an incident lasting not less than a minute and involving at least three persons. This report, oral or written, must include a full description of one of the persons involved, selected by the Examiner.

While this is the ideal badge for the country Troop, it can also be undertaken with great enthusiasm by a couple of friends or even by a whole Patrol under the leadership of a good Patrol Leader. There is a tremendous lot in it, and all the practices entailed are of tremendous interest to the kind of boy who might accurately be called “a born Scout”. How I wish there were more of these! And how I wish we Scouters took the trouble to make ourselves sufficiently knowledgeable and enthusiastic to pass on these joys to our boys! Why not you?

IN CONCLUSION

I hope that these very brief comments on the badges qualifying for the Bushman’s Thong have shown you all what a wonderful variety of training all this provides and that the actual tackling of three of these badges gives each boy experience of command, training in resource, and an insight into natural phenomena, the like of which no other Youth Organisation can possibly provide. We should not overlook the fact that the Seaman’s and Airman’s Badges, which are the alternatives to the Bush-man’s Thong, are not restricted to Sea and Air Scouts. The qualifying Badges for these two alternatives may well provide fresh avenues for adventurous activity for our Senior Scouts who are not in one of these two Branches.

I recommend that you make this Bushman’s Thong training the basis of the first year of your Senior Scout training and that the target of each boy is to have it before he is 16 ½ years old. Then he can go on to the Public Service Badges which constitute such a splendid introduction to the practice of service, which should be the hall-mark of every Rover and Scouter.
IF you think that this implies a huge great sigh of relief, you would be wrong. Right up to the last moment you might well have been right, but once the last test has been passed all else is swallowed up in a tremendous satisfaction. True, it is self-satisfaction, but for once, I think, we should congratulate rather than frown. It is the end of quite a long road, it is probably the climax of two years of effort, and, bearing in mind the persistence and perseverance most certainly required and the fact that no other Youth Organisation in the world dares to set so high a standard for its chief technical award, the new Queen’s Scout may justifiably feel quite happy and even proud.

Very shortly he will be wearing the coveted badge with the Crown on it.

He himself will have added to Troop tradition. His name may appear on the Honours Board in the Troop Headquarters. Later, with due ceremony, he may receive the Royal Certificate in the presence of the Chief Scout himself which he will take home to show his family and his Troop. It bears the signature of his Queen and reads thus:- “As a Queen’s Scout you have prepared yourself for service to God and your fellow-men, and have shown yourself a worthy member of the great Scout Brotherhood. I wish you God-speed on your journey through life; may it prove for you a joyous adventure.”

I accentuate this climax with set purpose. I do not believe that we can expect most Senior Scouts to qualify for the Queen’s Scout badge. This, I consider, would imply a standard of such
concentration, keenness and loyalty as would frighten away from our Movement many of the boys who need our training most. But that does not mean that we should put any standard other than the highest before every one of our young men. Who are we to say what their limitations are? The fact that we know quite well that the odds are against Bill or Harry ever becoming Queen’s Scouts must never be transmitted to them. In plain truth, there are far fewer Queen’s Scouts than there should be, and we Scouters must give far greater encouragement and more intensive boost to our Seniors in this matter. Leadership counts for so much here, and I am therefore devoting a third whole chapter on implementing our badge system - this time, an examination of the public service badges, which are the final tests for the coveted Crown.

Rule 440 states that before being awarded the Queen’s Scout badge a Scout must hold the Bushman’s Thong (or Seaman’s or Airman’s badge) and four of the Senior public service badges of which Ambulance is obligatory. He must also have an interview with the District Commissioner or an A.D.C. appointed for the purpose, after the Group Council has confirmed that he sets a personal example of the Scout way of life. (See Chapter 19, “Postscript”, for additional requirements.)

Rule 431(4) lists the public service badges and they are:-

Air Observer, Ambulance, Civics, Conservation, Despatch Rider, Fireman, Handyman, Interpreter, Leading Signaller, Pathfinder, Pilot, Public Health and Rescuer. As the Air Observer and Pilot Badges require technical instruction which I am not qualified to give, let us examine the remaining nine - one by one - starting with the Ambulance Badge which is obligatory and which, I suppose, is the most important proficiency badge in the Movement.
AMBULANCE BADGE.

**Ambulance**

(1) Pass or have passed the First-Aid badge.

(2) Know how to diagnose and demonstrate the treatment for all fractures to limbs, and for dislocated jaw.

(3) Demonstrate treatment for internal bleeding.

(4) Demonstrate four methods of carrying a patient, two when alone, and two with another Scout.

(5) Know how to deal with cases of suspected poisoning.

(6) Competently lead a team to deal with an accident as described in the First-Aid badge, para. 8.

(7) Demonstrate both Schafer and Holger Nielsen methods of artificial respiration. Using a training mannikin, demonstrate the Mouth to Mouth method of respiratory resuscitation. (In no circumstances will a living person be used for demonstration, training or testing purposes.) Show a knowledge of external cardiac resuscitation.

**First Aid**

(1) Demonstrate his knowledge of Second Class First-Aid.

(2) Know the position of the main arteries and how to stop external bleeding from veins and arteries.

(3) Demonstrate how to deal with shock (including electric shock).

(4) Know how to apply the triangular bandage to scalp, hand, foot, knee, and elbow; and the roller bandage to all limbs.
(5) Demonstrate the Holger Nielsen method of artificial respiration. Using a training mannikin, demonstrate the Mouth to Mouth method of respiratory resuscitation. (In no circumstances will a living person be used for demonstration, training or testing purposes.) Note: see P.O.R. 461 relating to this.

(6) Demonstrate how to send a correct message, oral, written and by telephone.

(7) Demonstrate how to deal with a fracture of the collar-bone. Understand the importance of immobilising a fractured limb. Understand the importance of not moving other suspected fractures.

(8) Take part as a member (not necessarily as Leader) of a team of three or four Scouts and deal with an incident staged by the Examiner. Such incident to be based on the above items and to be conducted in as realistic a manner as possible. All action proper to the circumstances must be actually taken and the Examiner will test for coolness, resource, correct action (message to doctor, police, Scouter, parents, etc.) and proper treatment of the patient at all stages.

The general public seems to presume that every boy in Scout uniform has some knowledge of first-aid and, when the Scout is a big one - like most of ours are - then quite a high standard is expected. And - let us face it - first-aid practice is not always too popular with Seniors. Thus its presentation, both by methods of instruction and variations in practice, are matters of real concern to us Scout Leaders.

Very few Scout Leaders will claim to keep themselves sufficiently up to date in first-aid method as to be competent instructors for Senior Scouts. For that matter, many a qualified Ambulance Instructor has found himself fully stretched by some of the questions of why and wherefore fired at him by some of our young men. No, finding a good Instructor is not an easy matter, and,
having found one, our troubles are not over because the good ones are generally enthusiasts. We must remember that it is really hard for them to lower the temperature of their enthusiasm and realise (1) that first-aid is only one of a great many interesting practices in Scouting, (2) that half an hour’s concentration is about as much as a young fellow wants at 8.30 on a Friday evening and (3) that most boys, because of homework and night-school, have little time to attend special ambulance lectures on other nights than Troop nights. The wise S.S.L. will carefully explain these limitations to the good man he has caught to help him in this work. Thereafter he will do his best to hold the balance between the enthusiasm of the Instructor and the possible restlessness of his Scouts. If the Instructor favours theory to practice, the Scout Leader will have to be tactful, and, if the Scouts show signs of failing manners, he will have to come down heavily when he is alone with them.

As a result of considerable experience in this sort of thing, may I make a list of the points I now observe:-

(1) Never allow an ambulance course to be of indefinite length. Say at the start that it will last for 10 evenings of half-an-hour each and get the Instructor to map out accurately each evening’s target. The whole project should be detailed on the notice-board so that all the Troop may know what is happening. Incidentally, it is more than likely that the 30 minutes will lengthen to 40 whatever you say or do.

(2) Get the Patrol Leaders to make a list of the requirements of the whole badge and get them to make a tick after the name of each boy in his Patrol when he is satisfied that the boy knows that part of it. This keeps the P/L in the picture, which is highly necessary.

(3) See that as much as possible of the first-aid time is given over to actual incidents. The boys learn best that way, and it is much more exciting and interesting. They get accustomed (a) never to step over a patient, (b) to act under the leadership of the P/L, (c) to diagnose before they treat, (d) to remember that shock is normally present, and (e) to remember that they are looking after a boy and
not an injury. Moreover, when the boys are themselves the patients, they have to learn the signs and symptoms if they are to act the part accurately. All this is good fun and excellent training.

(4) Use the Boy Scouts Association First Aid Handbook, so excellently written by Mr. Watkin Williams, and see that each Patrol has a copy. It is up to you to see that each P/L keeps it in actual use and circulation.

(5) See that each Patrol and each Scout has a “practice” first-aid kit which he brings along to each meeting as part of his uniform.

(6) See that each Scout also carries a small but serviceable first-aid kit.

(7) Encourage the Troop (in Patrols) to enter for all Ambulance competitions under both District and County auspices. They will learn a lot every time.

I think an Ambulance Course ought to be organised as an integral part of the Troop programme every second year. Then during the following 21 months there can be regular incidents either on a Troop or Inter-Patrol basis to keep everybody up to a reasonable pitch of efficiency. All this won’t just happen. It has to be carefully organised by the Court of Honour and the Scout Leader will find that he continually will need to ginger things up.

One other point. Don’t require a fellow to wait until the next Troop badge class starts before he takes the Ambulance Badge. Encourage him to attend a local British Red Cross or St. John Ambulance Association course. Alternatively, try to get him to have a bash at the thing with a pal - seeing the Troop’s own Instructor from time to time.

Finally, I must emphasise that a life may depend on your Troop’s efficiency at first-aid. It is as serious as that - and as splendid. Put
this vision before your Senior Scouts - they will catch the idea, and your biggest fence is over.

CIVICS BADGE

(1) Prepare two maps showing:
(a) the boundaries and wards of the parliamentary constituency in which the Group Headquarters is situated.
(b) the boundaries of the borough or district council and those of its wards and parishes in which the Group Headquarters is situated. The standard of the maps should be such that his Group could use them to beat the hounds should they so desire.

(2) (a) Have studied the system of local government operating in his locality and describe the method of election and the qualifications for voting; and provide proof of his knowledge of this subject verbally or in written form.
(b) Show that he has a general knowledge of the organisation and administration of his own Church.

(3) Write a short history (1,000 to 2,000 words) of the neighbourhood in which the Scout lives. It must cover at least 500 years.

(4) Know in general terms the effect of local conditions on either
(a) Agriculture or
(b) Industry in the neighbourhood in which the Scout lives. (The Scout to choose the alternative.)

(5) (a) Have an elementary knowledge of the sources of English Law or (in Scotland) Scots Law.
(b) Know something about criminal procedure, how Civil cases are dealt with and the right of appeal from all courts.

(6) Produce evidence that he is helping his neighbours, especially those who are handicapped or aged, or is training himself to do so.
This is one of the badges introduced in September, 1959 and it will probably appeal to the more intellectual of our young gentlemen. The first thing we Scouters must ensure is that a good standard is maintained because this is one of the qualifying badges for the Queen’s Scout Badge.

This badge is firstly a blend of what should be discovered and sought out by the Scout on his own and secondly what is best covered by a Badge Class. It seems pretty clear that the maps prepared by the Scout for Section (1) must not be mere copies of any prototype kept at Group H.Q. Each boy must ferret out the knowledge for himself. The same remark also applies to Sections (3) and (4) and I imagine the Examiner will not find the results in any way dull. Scouts will need some expert help if they are to cope with Sections (2) and (5) - especially (5) (a). S.S.L.s will thus have a duty to discover some tame lawyer who has the capacity of enthralling the younger generation in the elementary mysteries of the law.

Section (6) must he treated most thoroughly. I suggest the last clause “or is training himself to do so” he allowed only in the most exceptional circumstances. To mean anything at all the boy must be helping now, have been helping for some months, and is the kind of fellow who will continue to help without the stimulus of the badge system.

CONSERVATION BADGE

(1) Be able to describe the effect on wild life resulting from:- Fire, overgrazing, unwise forest practice, soil erosion and water pollution. Know bow erosion affects fish feeding grounds and spawning grounds. List the main sources of pollution of streams.

(2) Know the relationship between wild life and natural habitat and how the activities of man affect the natural environment.
(3) Know the relationship in nature between the units of one of the following groups:–
(a) Foxes, mice, and young forest plantations.
(b) Trees, insects, birds.

(4) Know why the laws are made setting definite seasons and bag limits on shooting and fishing, and know the proper dates and bag limits on two species of game, and two of game fish.

(5) Do one of the following:–
(a) *Make a list of the kinds of birds, mammals, insects and wild flowers on a plot of un-grazed woodland of about 4 acres (140 yards by 140 yards square). Make a similar list for an area of 4 acres of woodland long grazed by cattle, and state why the populations are so different.
(b) *Select one species of wild life common in your neighbourhood and find out what are the best ways to protect it.
(c) *Go out for at least two days with a fisherman, game keeper, fishery officer or conservationist, and write a report on the methods he uses.

(6) Do one of the following:–
(a) *Help stock or fertilize a farm pond.
(b) *Plant 100 yards of stream banks to control erosion.
(c) *Set out 100 food plants for birds and mammals.
(d) *Help plant a windbreak or hedge or other suitable winter cover for wild life.
(e) *Build and set out in suitable places eight nesting boxes.

*Alternative*
(1) Know what is meant by the following terms:– precipitation, run off, ground water, water table, evaporation, transpiration, and make a diagrammatic drawing illustrating this complete cycle.

(2) (a) Name three causes of floods.
(b) State three methods of controlling floods.
(3) Name three different causes of pollution in rivers or streams, and indicate how these can be controlled.

(4) Explain how water conservation is related to soil conservation.

(5) Do one of the following:-
(a) *Follow a small stream to its source, and see where it originates.
(b) Estimate the flow of water in a stream indicated by the Examiner.
(c) *Help make a farm pond.
(d) *Carry Out or assist with bank erosion control or other improvement project on a stream, pond or lake.

(6) Do one of the following:
(a) *Visit a project built for flood control, or for increasing summer flow in a river, or for irrigation purposes, and write a report on conditions before and after construction.
(b) *Visit a farm pond and write a report on the type and purpose of the pond.
(c) *Visit a stream or river and write a report on its condition under the heading of:-
   (i) colour; (ii) smell; (iii) fish; (iv) swimming.
(d) *Find out what happens to domestic and industrial waste in his community and give a written report on (i) the methods used to purify the waste and prevent pollution or (ii) what should be done to prevent it polluting waterways.

Alternative
(1) Name and describe five kinds of soil.

(2) Know the meaning of the terms:- organic, inorganic, soil profile, humus and tilth.

(3) Explain what is meant by:- contour, deep, and shallow ploughing.
(4) Describe what is meant by crop rotation and how it assists more efficient production.

(5) Explain the meaning of:- gully erosion, wind erosion, stream bank erosion; and give a method for controlling each of the above types of erosion.

(6) Do one of the following:-
(a) *Examine a soil profile and identify the different layers (horizons).
(d) *Help carry out a soil conservation project on a farm or Scout Camp site.
(c) *Plant at least 100 shrubs or trees as part of a soil conservation plan to prevent erosion.

(7) Do one of the following:-
(a) Take a photograph or make a sketch of one form of erosion mentioned in (5) above.
(b) Plant two bean seeds in a flower pot of topsoil, and two bean seeds in a flower pot of subsoil. Tend them for a month and report on difference in rate of growth in two pots, appearance of plants, and other differences.
(c) In a glass jar collect muddy water from a stream and allow to stand for six hours. Observe the amount of soil which settles to the bottom. State where you think the soil originated.
(d) In a shallow dish, place wet samples of two different soils, one low in organic matter and other high. Dry out thoroughly and make a brief report of the effect on each.

NOTE.- Items marked * may be carried out in company with other Scouts taking the same test but reporting separately.

The first plea I have to make is that we should give this badge extra publicity. The very length of the conditions and the scientific background of the whole matter must be a challenge to each of us S.S.L.s. This is one of those subjects which can so enrich Scouting and the enjoyment of life. If we can interest our boys in wild life,
water or soil conservation, we are without doubt keeping ourselves abreast of current thinking. Our Movement must never shrink from new thought or refrain from introducing new interests to the boys. Here we have another chance so let us seize it with intelligence.

Not only country boys will be interested. Boys at Technical Colleges and those taking advanced courses at Grammar Schools will know much of these subjects already. The standard of passing must be carefully examined. This is one of the badges qualifying for the Queen Scout Badge and no “automatic” passing by a master at school can be countenanced - as sometimes happened with the Interpreter Badge in the bad old days during the first World War when I gained my King’s Scout. By all means utilise the experience and interest of schoolmasters, but D/Cs must be quite sure that these gentlemen are fully aware of the conditions set out in our rules and the objects of our Badge system.

DESPATCH RIDER BADGE

(1) Demonstrate that he knows the Highway Code, traffic signals, lighting-up times, road signs, National system of road numbering, and is able to read a road map.

(2) Own, or have the use of, a cycle, a motor cycle or motor car.

(3) Be able to carry out running repairs on the cycle, motor cycle or car.

(4) Carry a verbal message of not less than 40 words and deliver correctly after a journey of at least five miles, in the course of which he must meet and deal with some emergency staged by the Examiner.

(5) Make a report, including a sketch map of the scene, on some emergency such as a motor accident, giving adequate details for the police and doctor.
Write a message from dictation and deliver it to a point at least five miles away indicated only by map reference.

In A.R.P. or Civil Defence the Scout who was experienced in remembering messages and getting through with them, whatever the opposition, was an asset of great value. Thus, when in these days of peace I seek to train boys for and test boys in this badge, I always have in the back of my mind some emergency with which these present boys might well have to cope.

There are five sections to test in this badge - road knowledge, care and maintenance of his bike, carrying verbal and dictated messages, surmount an emergency, and describe an incident - and, if you test them separately, you will destroy the badge’s essential appeal and purpose. If it is to be anything at all, it must be tested as a whole - a well-thought-out and exciting series of happenings. Perhaps it would help if I described very briefly an escapade we enjoyed quite recently:

(1) The Scout was told that very serious floods had swept the locality and a holiday camp some 7 miles away was isolated. Food, warm clothing and other supplies had to be dropped by helicopter, but organising this required a Scout with a good bike. “What about your bike?” Questions of maintenance and repair followed.

(2) Scout was told to report to the local W.V.S. Headquarters. From there he took a verbal message to the W.V.S. Clothing Store (4 miles away) whereby they would have certain detailed stores and food ready for the helicopter next day.

(3) On to the Holiday Camp to repeat the latter message to the Commandant and also another message from the Clothing Store to the Commandant.
(4) The Holiday Camp is isolated by floods. Cyclist had to cross river by rope bridge carrying bike. (Done in dark with aid of bike lamps - great fun.)

(5) Commandant, having received both messages, dictates involved reply to W.V.S. Headquarters and the cyclist returns there.

(6) On return to W.V.S. Headquarters, cyclist reads out dictated message and is questioned as to efficiency of Clothing Store. Also describes his own adventures. About eight boys did this test and everything was very carefully pointed by quite an army of rather sadistic helpers. If the boy earned sufficient points, he was promoted from a mere cyclist to a D.R. Good show! Another recent spot of fun involved the cyclists plus their bikes in crossing a lake on a raft. The test detailed above does not include Section (1) and this would have to be added either before or after. This Section of the test, however, can be integrated very satisfactorily into a test the main feature of which is a road accident and complications arising there from. These sorts of exercises take lots of time to organise and need quite a few people to run the incidents, but they are very much worthwhile and give the Scout the essential realisation that he, as a Scout and as a potential Queen’s Scout, has a duty to serve the community on all occasions. Have four or five of these exercises a year in your Troop programme.

FIREMAN’S BADGE

Fireman
(1) Pass or re-pass the Fire-fighter badge.

(2) Have a knowledge of the history and traditions of the Fire Service, how it is organised and functions in (a) his own Brigade area and (b) the remainder of the country.
(3) Know the dangers and understand the fire precautions in the home and at his Scout Headquarters relating to domestic heating, cleaning materials, petrol, coal fires, electricity, electric irons, fuses and meters, gas, storage of materials, fireworks, candles, bonfires, smoking materials, doors and windows. Plan the fire precautions and seating arrangements for a Scout or similar entertainment, and know why precautions are necessary. Know the dangers of fire at camp and what precautions should be taken.

(4) Explain the methods of rescue employed; explain and demonstrate crawling with an insensible person.

(5) Demonstrate how to lift and walk with an insensible person by means of the Fireman’s Lift.

(6) Know the causes of heath and grass fires, and how to deal with an outbreak. Know and demonstrate the function and proper use of a foam extinguisher, and the use of a hose reel (garden hose). Demonstrate the use of a mat for beating or smothering.

(7) Demonstrate running out a length of fire hose, connecting to a hydrant and how to hold the branch.

(8) Following an inspection of a Fire Station and appliances, be able to answer questions on the working of a fire station and the general use of equipment carried on fire appliances.

Fire-fighter
(1) Understand how your local Fire Brigade works.

(2) Know what precautions are necessary and the possibilities of danger in - oil lamps, all types of heaters and stoves, airing linen, decorations, electrical wiring, fuses and switches.

(3) Explain what action should be taken, and why, on an outbreak of fire indoors or outdoors. Know the various methods of calling the Fire Service and the correct procedure to be taken; have
knowledge of what happens from the time of the call to its acceptance by the Fire Service. Know the essential action to be taken whilst awaiting the arrival of the Fire Service and the reasons for such action.

(4) Take part in a bucket chain. Know how to use a stirrup pump. Know how to use a soda acid extinguisher and a Carbon Tetrachloride extinguisher, and on what kind of fire they would be used. Know how to deal with a person whose clothes are on fire.

(5) Be proficient in making a chair knot and bowline on the bight. Demonstrate the use of a serum to keep back crowds.

(6) Give a simple explanation of the process of combustion, know the effects of smoke and heat, and how to act in smoke.

This is usually run by the local Fire Brigade, and my experience is that Chief Fire Officers are most co-operative and keen to help. Actually, I find my chief difficulty is getting them to make the eventual test sufficiently stiff. After all, it is a Queen’s Scout Badge. The fact that the actual instruction has been taken out of our hands does not relieve us of the responsibility of ensuring that a proper and exacting test is set before the boys.

HANDYMAN BADGE

(1) Be able to do 10 of the following, at least six of which (selected by the Examiner) must be demonstrated:-
(a) Renew a sash cord, or replace a casement window frame and hang.
(b) Glaze a window, both in wood and iron frames.
(c) Whitewash a ceiling, paper or distemper a room.
(d) Know what precautions to take against frost and how to thaw Out frozen pipes in a dwelling house.
(e) Repair defective plastering.
(f) Re-hang a door and repair door furniture, including handles, locks, etc.
(g) Effect minor repairs to furniture, such as broken castors and minor upholstery repairs.
(h) Lay and adjust crazy paving.
(i) Clean and adjust gas fire or gas cooker.
(j) Put a neat patch on a garment, and darn a sock or Scout stocking.
(k) Clean and polish a car.
(l) Wash and iron a shirt.
(m) Mix concrete and effect simple repairs with it.
(n) Repair children’s toys.
(o) Lay lino.

This must be done properly - otherwise it is just a farce. By the very nature of things there must be a number of Examiners for this badge in the District. If not, the poor soul will probably find himself facing divorce proceedings from a perfectly justified wife. I am trying the following at the moment. Each interested Senior Scout has a list of the things required by the badge and, as we hear of work needing doing, we detail a boy. As a result he may or may not get a signature to his list. I often wonder whether this badge improves other people’s opinion of Scouting. However it can be a jolly good and useful badge; so don’t let it be easy. Do remember that it is a service badge.

**INTERPRETER BADGE**

Pass the following tests in any language other than his own:-
(a) Carry on a simple conversation lasting 15 minutes and introducing some of the basic Scout vocabulary, e.g., the words for Scout, Patrol, camp, tent.
(b) Write a letter of about 300 words dealing with a simple Scout topic chosen by the Examiner.
(c) Read aloud intelligibly and give an approximate translation (without the help of a dictionary) of a paragraph of average difficulty from a book, newspaper or periodical.
I see no reason why this badge should not be tested at school provided the language master doing the testing is willing to take the trouble to make the test a real Scout test. I made an experiment last year which was quite a success and I think worth passing on. We were going to Norway for our summer expedition and early in the New Year “Norwegian” appeared regularly in the weekly Troop programmes for all to take part in. Those who showed especial keenness were greatly helped by a visiting Norwegian Scouter, whom we met at the International Week-end at Gilwell, and just before we left home he held a test. Five passed. The standard was nothing like as high as it would have been for either French or German, but they did know quite a bit and during our hike this little experiment showed itself quite a success. I believe that variations such as these are bang in line with what B.-P. intended and I commend the idea to you.

Another point. If a boy passes his Interpreter Badge see to it that he wears the “Parle Francais” or “Taler Norske” badge on his shirt - and keeps it there if he goes to France or Norway. This is a public service badge and a boy must keep his knowledge up to scratch if he is to continue to be of use. I don’t think we Scouters use the thrill and fascination of the international attractions of the Scout Movement enough. The International Department at H.Q. is always keen to know of reliable Seniors who can be trusted to meet and conduct foreign Scouts when they arrive in our country. Such service by our Seniors makes the international “idea” live. Otherwise it may well become just a thin fraud. It is the same with the Interpreter Badge - make it real by every means in your power. No badge is ever an end in itself, and that is very true here.
LEADING SIGNALLER

(1) Send and receive a message of not less than 150 letters at rate 9 in Semaphore (45 letters per minute).

(2) Send and receive a similar message in Morse:- On buzzer at rate 8 (40 letters per minute).
     On lamp at rate 6 (30 letters per minute).

(3) Demonstrate that he knows a recognised procedure when sending and receiving a message.

(4) Improvise at least two methods of sending a message (one Morse and one Semaphore) at least half a mile at or over rate 4 (20 letters per minute.)

Note.- 90 per cent, accuracy to be required in all tests. Outdoor sending and receiving stations to be a minimum of 200 yards apart. Buzzer stations to be in separate rooms.

This is a splendid badge, but I seldom see a Senior Scout wearing it. Although signalling is no longer a compulsory activity in Scouting, I do most sincerely hope that it will not die out. It is wonderful training, as well as being great fun when taken up with enthusiasm. If any of your chaps approach you about the Leading Signaller Badge, please don’t put them off just because you yourself cannot instruct them. Your duty is quite the reverse. The boy who gains this badge is a worthy fellow indeed. Normally two boys take up the subject together, and this sort of initiative is worth far more to these two boys than attending a badge class on, say, astronomy laid on for the whole Troop. I always feel rather uneasy when I hear of four or five Queen’s Scouts graduating together. Something very valuable is lost if a boy gains an important award like the Queen’s Scout by just swimming with the stream along with others. I don’t think there is any danger of this happening if he gains the Leading Signaller badge.
PATHFINDER BADGE

Pathfinder Badge
(1) Pass or have passed the Guide badge.

(2) Demonstrate that he has thoroughly explored an area of at least two miles radius (not around his own home or H.Q.) by submitting logs of his expeditions for two of the following specific objects:
(a) Following out all footpaths, bridle paths and waterways shown in past and present maps and reporting on their present existence and condition.
(b) Preparing a full report on the agriculture and industries of the locality and the use to which the land is put.
(c) Making a full report on the history of the locality, giving particulars and history of any antiquities or places of special interest and the extent to which it is disfigured by modern developments including advertising, etc.
(d) Preparing a full report on the soil, trees, shrubs, flowers, birds and animals found in the area.
(e) Making a full report on not less than five miles of a navigable river or canal, including tides, channels, shoals or mud-banks, local rules and customs, including “local rule of the road” and any regulations affecting the use of the waterways by Scouts. The report to include full details of two camp-sites adjacent to mooring places in the area.

Note.- *The logs submitted will give mileage covered and be accompanied, as far as possible, by explanatory sketches, maps and photographs.*

Guide Badge
(1) Show (wherever reasonable in a practical way) that he knows the locality surrounding his home and his Scout Headquarters, up to I mile radius in Boroughs and Urban Districts and up to 2 miles radius in Rural Districts.
The D.C. may, at his discretion, vary the area to exclude undesirable neighbourhoods, parks or other open spaces, and include an equivalent area.

(2) Know the whereabouts of the following:
(a) Doctors, Veterinary Surgeons, Dentists, Hospitals and Ambulance.
(b) Fire Station, Police Station, Garages, Public Telephones.
(c) Bus Stops, Railway Station(s), and routes of buses and trains to surrounding areas.
(d) Scout Headquarters, Public Parks, Theatres, Cinemas, Churches, Museums, Barracks, Public Conveniences and any building or place of local interest.
(e) Homes of his D.C., S.M., G.S.M. and the Scouts in his Patrol.

(3) Show that he understands how to use a map of the district and use it to point out at least six examples of (2) above.

The Scout should guide the Examiner to any place covered by the above by the quickest route.

(4) For the Metropolitan Police Area the following alternative to the tests in para. 2 (a), (b), (c) and (d) is permitted at the discretion of the appropriate D.C.:-
Have a sound general knowledge of what parts of the country are served by the main-line railways and how to reach the principal London railway termini, the main motor coach stations, the air terminals and twelve places of national importance (e.g., The Tower, Zoo, etc.) from his Headquarters or home.

The under 15 Guide Badge covers a lot of knowledge making its wearer potentially very useful to any visitor to his home town. As such, it is a jolly good public service badge. The second part of the Pathfinder Badge, however, does not seem to me to be quite in line with this idea. It certainly encourages the highly desirable exploratory instinct, and, as such, it should not be disregarded.
PUBLIC HEALTH BADGE

Public Health

(1) Know what is meant by Public Health - what it is and how it has developed.

(2) Have a general knowledge of the functions of the human body and how it works.

(3) Have a knowledge of the modern methods of disease prevention.

(4) Know the rules of healthy living in camp and construct to a high degree of efficiency:
   - A camp incinerator.
   - A properly screened and fitted latrine suitable for a Patrol camp of 7 days.
   - A grease pit.
   - A camp urinal.
   - A camp larder, proof against flies, to take perishable food for a Patrol.

(5) Know how to improve and safeguard his own personal health.

(6) Understand the dangers of infectious and contagious diseases, including venereal diseases, and the measures taken by the Local Authorities to prevent their occurrence.

(7) Describe the methods used in his district to ensure sanitary storage, collection and destruction of house refuse, and understand the importance of such measures.

(8) Pass or have passed the Missioner badge.
Missioner
(1) Demonstrate how to choose, prepare, and ventilate a sick-room.

(2) Know how to bath a patient and give medicine. Demonstrate how to take temperature, pulse and respiration.

(3) Demonstrate how to prepare invalid food and fomentations. Know how to prevent bed sores.

(4) Demonstrate how to prepare dressings and how to apply a roller bandage to hand, knee and foot.

(5) Carry out all the above under camp conditions (as well as in a sick-room) and know how to prepare a rest tent.

The terms of this badge are wide indeed and involve both practical work and considerable book knowledge. Much of both can be covered by a series of badge classes and the rest can well be practised at some permanent camp-site or at the summer camp of the Boy Scout Troop. The Scout Leader will have to be called in, I imagine, to secure competent instructors and he will find himself with quite a job on as a result. Before he starts to book speakers and so on, I advise him to make absolutely certain that the Troop are really keen and willing to apply themselves seriously to this very difficult and worthwhile badge.

RESCUER BADGE

(1) Perform in the water four methods of rescue (one to be the “Unigrip”), and three of release from the clutch of a drowning person. The drowning subject to be about the size of the rescuer, and to be carried at least 15 yards in each method.

(2) Dive from the surface to a depth of at least five feet and bring up a stone, brick or iron object of not less than five pounds in weight, at least two out of three times.
(3) Swim 50 yards attired in shirt and trousers and undress before touching ground.

(4) Throw a lifeline to within one yard of a small object 50 feet away. Thrower to be up to the waist in water.

(5) Lead a team to deal with emergencies as given in the Life-saver badge.

(6) Demonstrate both the Holger Nielsen and the revised Silvester methods of respiratory resuscitation. Using a training mannikin, demonstrate the Mouth to Mouth method of respiratory resuscitation. (In no circumstances will a living person be used for demonstration, training or testing purposes.)

I rate this badge second only to the Ambulance badge. I always like to think of every Scout as a potential life-saver. Unless, however, he is a good swimmer and has been trained in life-saving, the boy may find himself just a useless witness to tragedy when someone falls into a river, a canal or the sea. And so may we!

Most schools arrange for life-saving training to be given to suitable boys, and we in the Scouts should see that every boy keen to learn has adequate instruction given to him. How I wish that we Scouters would concern ourselves more with this matter.

IN CONCLUSION

There is now one further requirement. The Scout, having passed all the necessary qualifying badges, has to appear before his District or County Commissioner. Not only must he be technically an efficient Scout. The essential is that he should be a fellow who is sincerely trying to carry out the Scout Promise and in whose hands the honour of Scouting is safe. It is, therefore, the duty of the Commissioner to ensure that the standards by which the boy has passed the various tests are satisfactory and, above all, to satisfy
himself that the young man before him is really worthy to be called a “Queen’s Scout”.

Now let us arrange these public service badges under the following headings:-

Life Saving:                      Ambulance, Rescuer.
Possible Civic Utility:      Despatch Rider, Fireman, Leading
                             Signaller, Pathfinder, Public Health,
                             Civics, Conservation.

To have to gain the Ambulance Badge and three others of those listed above together with the specialised Scoutcraft badges comprising the Bushman’s Thong represents a sustained effort on the boy’s part of between one and two years at least. Surely this deserves the congratulation I mentioned at the start of this chapter. I just hope that every Scouter of us makes sure that practically every boy joining the Senior Troop at about 15 is made to realise that all this is possible for him, provided he is a keen and enthusiastic Scout. To this end every boy should map out his own particular plan of action which, if followed, will make him a Queen’s Scout in due time. If he has no target, he will never hit it. To give him this vision of what he can attain is the Scouter’s principal job, and we must ever be mindful of it.

I want to add this. Every time I have the honour of presenting a Queen’s Scout badge or certificate I always want to congratulate the boy’s Scouter. In Australia, I am told, the Scouter is invited to the investiture when the boy receives the Royal Certificate from the Governor General. This is just right, and no better way of concluding these three chapters can possibly be found than to reassure every Scouter what valuable work he is doing for his country in turning out boys of such distinction. If any of you who read this think that I am exaggerating, let him seek the privilege of attending one of the investitures held in his country and see for himself. It is a wonderful tonic.
One other point must be emphasised and it concerns the discretion always within the hands of the Scout Leader. It is not sufficient for the boy to have passed all the tests. The Chief Scout is quite emphatic that the man who knows the boy best - his own Scout Leader - must recommend him for the Queen’s Scout Badge only if he is satisfied that the boy is really trying in every way to be a Scout. I am well aware that for the Scout Leader to recommend otherwise at this stage will need lots of courage but occasionally circumstances do make this a clear matter of duty. If the Scout Leader shirks this issue either directly or indirectly - he will be letting down the Movement, his Troop, and the boy himself. It is happily and splendidly true that such occasions are rare but, once again, it is the Scout Leader who must decide.

“Congratulate the boy’s Scoutmaster.”

Finally, I cannot over-emphasise the importance of the new service requirement for the Queen’s Scout Badge as mentioned in Chapter 19.
IT was in 1933, I think, that I was paid one of the greatest compliments I have ever received. A Patrol Leader of our Troop was discussing Troop affairs with a Patrol Leader of a neighbouring Troop and they got round to comparing their Scoutmasters. Said our young man, “You should do as we do - we run our Troop ourselves.” I was a young Scouter at the time and this me somewhat, because I had been under the impression that I was Boss. Devastating announcements such as these do us all such a lot of good. Quite by accident I must have been roughly on the right lines.

Some time ago in “The Scouter” were some forthright letters in “we run our Troop the correspondence columns about ourselves.” incompetence and unwillingness of Seniors to run their own show, and I know from experience how fed up the Scouters must have been with their examples of modern youth. This age group of ours fifteen to seventeen inclusive - is just plain shocking! By and large, they are hardly fit to live with on occasion. At times they can be charming. Sometimes their code of moral values is just appalling. At other times they are magnificent Christians. We Scouters have to remember that we dealing with individual and corporate instability. Some nights we will return from a Troop Meeting looking forward to next. A week later we are seriously thinking of throwing the whole thing up. It is against a background such as this that you hear - without even the vestige of a smile - that the fellows want to run their own show.

You should be thankful anyway that they are keen enough to want to, but pray remember these five things:-
1. They are technically unable to do so well.
2. Their enthusiasm is not likely to last.

3. They will upset lots of other people by their enthusiasm.

4. They will greatly annoy each other in their lack of judgement and patience, and

5. They will lose boys from the Troop however much they try to make amends too late.

This is no condemnation of modern youth. It always was so. These facts are the justification for Scout Leaders. Let us examine what the Scouter needs to do to soften the shortcomings indicated above.

Let us take them in the order stated:-
1. They can prepare a perfectly good programme, but these programmes will become very ordinary in a few weeks unless the Scouter asks permission to do something unexpected one evening.

He knows special speakers; he can get hold of Instructors and Examiners. By his knowledge of public affairs, he can talk sensibly about current topics, by his experience of life he can put his foot down on a moral issue which no Patrol Leader, however well-meaning, could possibly hope to do.

Bearing in mind these points, the Scout Leader should let them carry straight on. He should, of course, attend the meeting, congratulate those who put up a good show, help and advise those who are unsure of themselves and kindly put right those who need correction. By his self-effacement he will help them more than by demonstrating his powers of management, and by his tact he will often save them from themselves.

“Even threaten.”
2. One of the principal functions of a Scouter is to suggest nicely, prod, kick and even threaten. He might as well keep his hair on, for he must get used to this sort of thing. Learning to function in this way with charm, with purpose, with decision, yet with patience and understanding is the hallmark of an experienced Senior Scout Leader. It is thus that most of his authority is exercised.

3. Young men seldom look sufficiently ahead, seldom think of asking permission, and usually consider older people very stuffy if they ask for a reason for a particularly mad enterprise. I like to think that merely the presence of a Scouter should allay these fears. In any case, he should not rely on his reputation, but in good time prepare the ground and afterwards see that any deputations of apology are organised, windows are mended and letters of thanks written.

4. The basis of behaviour in every Troop must be the Scout Law and No. 4 has to be invoked now and again. Long before a clash of opinion or behaviour may reach the stage of discussion at the Court of Honour, trouble may be unnecessarily created, and it is here that our understanding Scouter, who is trusted by his Patrol Leaders, can render invaluable service. He will do it quietly, often unnoticed, the principals themselves.

5. Boys can usually deal with boys, but no Patrol Leader can be expected adequately to deal with parents. When one of the Troop is persistently slacking and the boy to boy treatment is proving ineffective, then it is time for the adults to take a hand. Here is a job that only the Scouter can do and as he grows older - and we hope becomes wiser - more effective he will be in the interests of the way-ward brother. It is quite true that the young Scouter in charge of Seniors has a much more difficult job than I have when
dealing with parents. Being older than most of them I can talk with some authority and can, if I wish to, adopt a “take it or leave it” attitude. The younger man is impertinent if he tries that sort of thing and he must base his suggestions on the perfectly valid premise that:-
(a) he is the Scout Leader and is responsible for the Troop,
(b) he does this Sort of thing for love, and
(c) he has the backing of the District Commissioner.

Always remember that, although we Scout Leaders are out to serve the boys, we are not general “dog’s-bodies” to be kicked around.

So far this chapter has been somewhat vague and deals with attitude rather than organisation and specific action. So now let us examine the various bits of organisation existing in Scouting which lean towards true democracy.

In the Boy Scout Troop there is little complication because the power of the Court of Honour, guided by the Scoutmaster, is supreme. It is not quite the same in the Senior Troop.

Besides the Court of Honour, there is the Troop-in-Council, and sometimes the question is asked - “which comes first - the chicken or the egg?” The answer is perfectly clear in my mind. The Court of Honour is responsible, under the general guidance of the Scout Leader, for the running of the Troop. The Troop-in-Council functions in either one of two ways, or both. First, for instance, it may meet in July or September to discuss widely and freely the prospects and programme of the year starting on 1St October. This will doubtless give the Court of Honour a pretty accurate idea of current opinion in the Troop and they will certainly bear it in mind when they meet to create, prepare and implement the various plans and programmes for the forthcoming period. If they think the
Troop needs more vital leadership than is contemplated by the Troop-in-Council, then the Court of Honour must show its courage and lay its own plans. They are responsible, and responsibility must have power. Secondly, after the Court of Honour has taken its decisions it may call a meeting of the Troop-in-Council, so that the decisions of the Court may be explained, discussed and, if possible, agreed to.

I hope I have made clear the relation between the Court of Honour and the Troop-in-Council and have emphasised the ultimate importance and authority of the former. I consider, therefore, that a few comments on the Senior Court may be useful. First of all, it has essentially four functions:-

1. Planning and organising the affairs of the Troop as a whole. This leaves untouched the quite wide powers each Patrol Leader possesses in running his own patrol. Troop programmes for the next three months are worked out, special features, week-end stunts and social events are decided upon and handed over to one or two Scouts to arrange, good turns are thought out and preparations for the summer expedition reviewed.

2. The second function of the Court is periodically to review the progress of every boy in the Troop. Each boy is discussed and each member of the Court is encouraged to speak his mind. This function of the Court of Honour is always confidential and only decisions are recorded in the Minutes.

It is one of the vital parts of the training of a Patrol Leader to realise that he is responsible for the all-round development of each fellow in his Patrol and also - to only a slightly less degree - for the progress and happiness of all the boys in the Troop.

“All-round development of the fellow.”
3. The third function is that pertaining to discipline and honour. Some Courts never seem to function in this way, and it cannot be because there is no cause.

Perhaps the Scout Leader has forgotten that the honour of the Troop is usually quite safe in the hands of the Patrol Leaders and that the influence on the Troop of this moral authority exercised by the boys themselves is both wholesome and profound. I always find that our Court of Honour of four Patrol Leaders and a Troop Leader is corporately wiser than myself. They see things from a different angle to me and they differ widely amongst themselves as to methods of approach. Furthermore, if the Court finds that it has to judge a boy’s conduct and devise a remedy which is both deterrent and reformatory, it will inevitably, in our Movement, tend to base its decision on the Scout Law. Thus does the Scout Law enter the councils of a Troop; thus do the Patrol Leaders find themselves compelled to act more in accordance with its precepts themselves; and in this way a worthy tradition is established. One day I intend to write a little book about morals and behaviour in our Movement, so I will not write further on this vital matter here.

4. The fourth function is that it affords the Scout Leader a splendid opportunity for giving his trusted leaders that extra instruction in technical Scouting and leadership training which they must have if they are to become progressively more efficient.

Now a word as to procedure. If you have only two or three Patrol Leaders and there is no Troop Leader, then I think the Scouter should take the Chair. I do not think he should vote. If you are lucky enough to have an assistant of some sort, I think he should attend as a right but should not vote. If there is a Troop Leader, I think he should take the Chair and have a casting vote only. In this case the Scouter should attend as a right but not vote. I believe proceedings should be partly formal and partly informal. In our Troop we meet on the third Sunday evening of every month at my house round the dining-room table. The Secretary does the things in style and turns up early. He arranges the chairs, puts any
trophies in the middle of the table, puts bits of thick cardboard (to save my table) opposite each chair and on them copies of the Agenda. All the members of the Court are in uniform and one day I hope they will all arrive on time. Proceedings start by the Troop Leader saying “Will you please stand. May this Court be in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Please sit down.” Then the fun starts and if functions 1 and 2 mentioned in the previous paragraph only are under consideration, fun it will most certainly be! I don’t as a rule sit at the table, but in an armchair by the fire. Later, towards the end of the formal bit I will probably draw up a chair and this is a sign that I have something to put forward. Then come drinks, which have laid out previously, because, although they seem to know where everything is, it is usually best that way. The funny things they drink! Then we have a spot of discussion and instruction. For instance, last month I read over the draft of Chapter 3 of this book and invited their comment. Very interesting, and it did us both good!

I hope you will have realised from the previous paragraphs how vital a good Court of Honour is. Without it, the Troop will never thrive of itself and will tend to lean far too heavily on the Scout Leader. Now a word about the Troop in-Council. I believe it best if it meets seldom. Otherwise it tends to weaken the Court of Honour. Furthermore, the very rarity of its deliberations adds greatly to its standing, and I cannot stress too strongly the absolute necessity of formality and ceremony in all its proceedings.

“We must not push too far.”

The Agenda is prepared by the Troop Secretary and each boy is given a copy. Each resolution submitted by the Court of Honour is in charge of a Patrol Leader. Any member of the Troop may move a resolution. Sometimes they stand to speak and do the thing in
style, but at other times there is just heated debate and much slander.

Before we finish this chapter, I suggest we look at these matters from a slightly different point of view. We Scouters do certainly have to prod, but we must not push too far. For instance, it is the boy’s own job to carve his own career - in Scouting, as elsewhere. We can help him qualify for the Bushman’s Thong and the Queen’s Scout Badge, but the planning and time-table ought to be his. Each Patrol must be on the top line, and it is our job to see that each Patrol Leader does his stuff, but each Patrol Leader will have different methods and they must be allowed (within the Law) to decide on their own trail towards happiness and efficiency.

The Scouter must know his Patrol Leaders well, and they must trust him. They must like each other’s company. For instance, when I was ill recently for some months, it was a real joy to me when a Patrol Leader came in to see me. I take it as a compliment when a Patrol Leader comes and just talks about his Patrol. He tells me what he wants to do and the ins-and-outs and of the difficulties he is having with this boy and that. When a boy is running his own show - and remember being a Patrol Leader is always a difficult job - he needs a man’s advice and I always reckon it is an honour to be asked to give it. This is discipleship and the analogy never ceases to make me humble. What sort of advice am I giving? What sort of an example am I setting? I always tell a new Patrol Leader that in three months’ time there will be little bits of him in each fellow in his Patrol, and it is absolutely true. We cannot escape similar responsibility, and ours is even greater. Our example is heeded by the Patrol Leader and what the Patrol Leader does may be reflected in all three of his Patrol. If you have many Patrol Leaders your responsibility is correspondingly greater. Yes, they will want to run their own show and - repeat - they will want your help.

The secret of success is, of course, the happy family spirit which animates every good Senior Troop. As long as there are loyalty,
kindness, fun and gaiety pervading the whole show, all will be well. Friendship will grow into brotherhood from which greatness springs.
Chapter 8
DUTY TO THE TROOP

THIS will be a short chapter, but it is very important. It follows on inevitably from what we have just been thinking about in the previous chapter.

Our duty to the Troop does not mean that we have no other interests, of that we must be quite clear. For instance, a Scout Leader who has no other interests than Scouting will inevitably become peculiar. Before Senior Scouting was the successful thing it is to-day, far too many Patrol Leaders were leading Patrols for anything up to three years and invariably their Seconds were about 13 or 14 years old. Those in the intervening age groups had left. These Patrol Leaders were good chaps, but so often we Scoutmasters allowed them to do too much Scouting and somehow or other they were not among the normal run of boys. Nowadays Senior Scouting has given us a healthier state of things. A P/L(S) has the much more exacting job of running a Patrol composed of fellows much nearer his own age. No longer is he king of the kids! His leadership is derived from a wider and much healthier basis. He thus tends to have many more interests and a much wider range of experience. This is all to the good, of course, but as a result, Scouting is only one of his interests, even though it is his most comprehensive one.

I think it necessary to mention all this in the light of what I am now going to say. Joining the Scouts is not just joining any old club. While in some clubs there are obligations and rules of membership, very few require their members prior to joining to take a promise made solely on the boy’s own volition. This moral background to Scouting is visible from time to time through the noise, excitement and enthusiasm of a Troop’s activities. Thus we
do tend to expect from a Scout a quite
definite and personal loyalty to his
Troop, and there is a general
understanding among us Scouts that to
permit a standard lower than this would
not only let the side down, but would be
quite unworthy of our whole tradition.

“Gathers the wood while
the Troop take it easy.”

Loyalty must begin at the top and the example of the Scout Leader
as regards his obligations to the Troop are of the utmost
importance. It is not easy to arrive at just the right attitude. We
have the highest authority when we say that the Master must be the
servant of his disciples, but that does not mean that at Camp the
Scouter fetches the water and gathers the wood while the Troop
take it easy in their tents. We rightly say that, if one of the boys
urgently wants to see us at any time, we will willingly let other
things go and do all we can to help. But if a Scout asks us to give
him a preliminary test in his Ambulance badge the day after to-
morrow, there is no reason why we should cancel a visit to the
cinema if that evening happens to be our only free evening that
week. Let us preserve a sense of proportion. We must always
remember that the young man of to-day is a very busy young
fellow, and I often find he is considerably more booked up than I
am, but, at the same time, we must not make ourselves cheap. It is
more reasonable for the boy to have to forgo his visit to the
pictures than to expect the Scouter to forgo his.

What happens, of course, if the facts come out, is that both go to
the pictures and the test gets done too. But the point is quite
important. Mind you, if it comes to it, I would far rather risk being
imposed upon than fail a boy in the hour of his apparent need. This
is part of our duty to the Troop, and the boys readily appreciate
what it means.
You have other duties to the Troop, and even the little ones are important. One day you will remember too late that you have to give a session on “Telling the time by the Stars” that very evening and so you do a spot of wangling so that there is not time for it in the programme. But it is still duty failed. Another evening You will attend a District Scouters’ Meeting without thinking out beforehand what action the items on the Agenda are likely to require. The standard you expect from your Patrol Leaders at the Court of Honour ought to be the minimum you lay before yourself. It is all part of your duty. The weeks before the summer expedition are always pretty busy, and you may have put off too long the thorough first-aid revision you promised yourself. Instead you content yourself with looking up concussion, fractures, sprains, bleeding and shock. But your conscience will tell you that this is only a second best. Your duty was plain.

You have another duty - to pray regularly for each of your Scouts. Sometimes I do this in the usual way on my knees in the quiet of a church, or in my bedroom. At other times I make myself comfortable in an armchair and think of them one by one. The object is always the same however the approach - how can I help? How is he doing and where is he going? What does he need? Can I be My Father’s instrument? If so, how? So I think on, musing, reflecting, praying - call it what I will. This is my principal duty and I can tell you Scouters as a matter of simple fact that the periods in my Scouting career when I remembered to do this regularly were the periods when the Troop was most happy and most friendly. Do please remember this.

The Patrol Leaders and Seconds have special responsibilities for which they wear their stripes and have certain privileges. However fed up they may be and however much they do not like the activity planned, they must turn up and appear enthusiastic. They usually think quite differently before the end of the evening. Patrol Leaders and Seconds must be reliable, that is their duty. They must always be in uniform and on time, for that, too, is their duty. They must always be up to date with their subs, for that example is
expected of them. All this, and much more, is a plain matter of
duty and for them to fail is breaking their promise and their
honour. So few realise this, and it is one of the essential duties of
the Scout Leader to remind them. You must not hesitate to do so.
Allow the Patrol Leader to slip and the Troop starts a gigantic
slide. Pick them up on even small things, not with a serious face, but
possibly with a laugh or a joke - but quite definitely all the same. They
made their promise to you as Patrol Leaders and you dare not overlook it
or pretend not to notice. The trust existing between you will stand the
strain all right, providing you are both straight and kind at the same time.

“They must always be in uniform.”

Every Scout has his duty to the Troop. If he finds he cannot turn up
to a Troop Meeting, he must let the right man know and provide a
deputy for any duty he is due to perform. To act otherwise is
shocking bad manners. Each Scout has the duty of regular
attendance because if one of the Patrol of four is away the result is
serious in an inter-Patrol fight. There are many more important
reasons than that. When a boy says he cannot come because of
homework, it is very often not a reason but an excuse. Prior to
examinations, special arrangements must be made which relieve
the Scout of the duty of attending Troop meetings. When all this
has been carefully planned and agreed with the Patrol Leader and
Scout Leader, I usually find that the fellow comes along anyway.

Such is the comic relief value of Scouting - and what a good
thing it is so! One other word about homework. Sometimes,
of course, it is a perfectly valid reason. The important thing is
that the fellow should always tell his Patrol Leader and Scout
Leader the truth and admit honestly when he is slacking.
Then we all know where we stand. This is one of the things a
Scout Leader talks about when he is yarning to a boy just about
to join the Troop. This, gentlemen, is of supreme importance - let us all be truthful, and, when a Scout says a thing, it is so. We have heard that before somewhere! There are many other duties. He should keep a diary and so conduct his affairs as to ensure that he backs the Troop on all important occasions.

“He should keep a diary.”

Reliability is a duty and attendance at the summer expedition is always a must with every enterprising Senior because it is all such splendid fun. But it is also a duty. Some preliminary camps are not so exciting, but if the Patrol Leader says “I want you to come,” it is the Scout’s duty to go. Some items in the Troop programme may not appeal, but duty is quite clear. A Scout’s loyalty to the other fellow is a duty he cannot shirk with honour. Conscience and duty live together and temptation lives next door. The Scouter must be ever watchful and help his young men to do their duty. It is a simple word denoting a noble concept of living. Try to give your boys a glimpse of its nobility.
Let Us Help Someone

THIS is the shortest and most important chapter in this little book. When this Movement of ours loses the good turn habit - either individually or collectively - it will become just an institution and lose its soul. It is precisely the same with a Troop or a Patrol. Please remember this yourself and continually talk about it with the Patrol Leaders. Scouting to-day is a very wonderful World-wide Movement and, when some of us look at pictures of 40-odd years ago and remember the things we did then, we are left without any doubt whatsoever that by and large we have progressed in a very wonderful way. But in one way the old days have much to teach us. We did more good turns then. I am tempted to say - “What profiteth a man. . . ? My brother Scouters, I know how dreadfully difficult it all is - especially in a town Troop where suburban snobbery seems to wither the natural Christian impulse to seek out those who need help.

Helpfulness is drowned by ignorance, indolence, isolation and pride, and by the fences round our little houses. Yet we in the Scouts could actually end all this. There are thousands of us in Britain alone. We have the good turn tradition inherited from the early days. We have a uniform famed for its service. We have thousands of boys of an age when idealism calls. Put in the right way, our young men will give all they have for a magnificent venture. Idealism is not dead!

What our young men need is an inspired lead. I don’t just mean “bob-a-job” with the bobs. I want you to think out something much finer, much more splendid. Make it a campaign! Devote a whole series of Troop Meetings to the enterprise and to blazes with all Queen’s Scout classes for a month or two. Don’t mind what people say. Don’t mind if your Patrol and Troop subscriptions are
exhausted! Don’t mind if it hurts! No scheme is great else! You may lose many things new camping gear, new pioneering tackle and ropes, lots of happy games periods at the week night meetings, badge presentations with you and the boys as the central figures, but, in exchange, you will gain something quite priceless. I am sure every one of you Scouters knows quite well what it is. But do the boys? What about letting them find out?

“Idealism is not dead!”

I expect you would like me to give you now a whole lot of ideas for good turns, but I cannot do it because I don’t know you or your Troop. Besides it would completely spoil your fun if I did.

This, incidentally, provides me with the opportunity of mentioning the Senior Instructor Badge. The details of this Badge are as follows:-

SENIOR SCOUT INSTRUCTOR BADGE

The Senior Scout Instructor badge is worn on the right breast above the line of the pocket. The Senior Scout Instructor badge is granted by the D.C., on the recommendation of the S.S.L. or S.M. A Senior Scout who is granted this badge for instructing Wolf Cubs will not wear the Cub Instructor badge (see Rule 225). Before being awarded the badge a Senior Scout must:-

1) Hold the Bushman’s Thong, Seaman’s or Airman’s badge.

2) Have shown qualities of leadership and a desire to use these qualities, together with his Scouting knowledge, to the benefit of Wolf Cubs or Boy Scouts.
With the approval of his S.S.L. have completed a probationary period of one month, and be prepared to continue, as an instructor to a Wolf Cub Pack or Boy Scout Troop to the satisfaction of the G.S.M. and C.M. or S.M. concerned.

In the case of Wolf Cub Packs the Senior Scout must:-
(a) Have a knowledge of, and ability to instruct in, the subjects of the First and Second Star badges and any two proficiency badges.
(b) Show a reasonable knowledge of the Wolf Cub’s Handbook.
(c) Know the duties of the C.M., and other Pack Scouters and the difference between the Cub and Scout training methods.

In the case of Boy Scout Troops the Senior Scout must:-
(a) Have a knowledge of, and ability to instruct in, the subjects of the First Class badge and two under-15 proficiency badges.
(b) Show a reasonable knowledge of “Scouting for Boys”.
(c) Know the duties of the S.M., the other Scouters of the Troop and its Court of Honour, and understand the Patrol System.

The badge will be surrendered within three months of the Senior Scout ceasing to act as an Instructor.

Encourage your Seniors to go for this Badge for it can become a stepping stone for further service and it will provide them with an opportunity of putting something back into the Movement which has given them so much fun. They will enjoy, too, showing off their greater knowledge and skill to their younger brothers.

In conclusion may I refer you simply to St. Matthew’s Gospel, chapter 25, verses 37 to 40, and may I suggest reverently that you repeat the last six words until you really believe them.
I HAVE been a Scoutmaster for over 30 years and I know of no one thing better calculated to cut down leakage than the worthwhile and exciting Summer Camp - or Expedition as we now call it when relating to Seniors. Many a boy - and I now know this for a fact, because they themselves have told me - has decided to stay on in the Troop until after the next summer camp, which sounded so exciting, and then leave. But at that summer camp plans were being made for the next one - and the young man stayed on. And the remarkable thing about this is that these were not easy camps but somewhat stern, demanding much energy and endurance.

Senior Scouts need an expedition which will involve much fun, some excitement, and containing a vital feature of challenge which is so unfortunately absent from their ordinary lives. This sort of thing cannot reasonably be expected in a Boy Scout Summer Camp and that is one very good reason for insisting as far as possible that the Seniors should go off on their own, seeking a new experience with real adventure in it - for to them adventure it assuredly is. In spite of this obvious argument, many Seniors still go away with the Boy Scout Troop and two reasons are usually given. First it is claimed that their help is needed in running the Boy Scout camp. If they are just 15 and still Patrol Leaders in the Boy Scout Troop, this is quite understandable. Secondly, there may not be a second Scouter available to run a separate camp, and in this case it is impossible for me to generalise. You see, some Patrol Leaders of a Senior Patrol are quite competent to run a splendid camp on their own. Some, I am afraid, are not, and then some sort of compromise is inevitable. But pray be careful how this compromise is settled. If you are thinking of allowing the Seniors to come to the Boy Scout camp either as a separate Senior Patrol or as an integral part of the younger boys’ camp, please note that two Seniors can ruin an otherwise delightful summer camp. They must have definite duties to perform and these must be onerous. Also they must be good
chaps and willing to refrain from doing certain things (like smoking and staying out late) just because these things are unsuited to a Boy Scout camp. Otherwise, don’t take them. I am sure some other Senior Scout Troop will include them in their summer expedition provided adequate notice is given. A month is not adequate notice. This last year two young Scouters I know took away four Troops numbering in all 15 boys into the Highlands of Scotland and did well. Otherwise these twos and threes could never have experienced anything like it.

As I indicated in the first paragraph of this chapter, I strongly recommend deciding the outline of each Summer Expedition towards the end of the previous one. I may say that if you are going to Scandinavia by the Danish Steamship Go. from Harwich you will find that all the cheap ‘tween deck accommodation is completely booked up by the end of the previous October - so you do need to get your skates on. I also consider that you should try to stage these summer expeditions in three-year cycles to correspond to the three-year training period of the Senior Scout. Here are the three types I recommend after many years of experiment and personal leadership thereof. First a mountain walking holiday in Switzerland, Austria, the Black Forest, or some such place. This is comparatively easy, as all the paths are clearly sign-posted and consequently there is little or no danger. Secondly, an educative journey involving about 3 ½ days of travel each way and a week’s camp in some remote region in the middle. This requires considerable travel discipline but is greatly enjoyed by the boys if adequate preparations have been made. Thirdly, a camp in a really difficult area like the Highlands of Scotland, the Lake District, the Mountains of Wales, or even the Peak District. In all these regions the possibility of danger is ever present and a much higher standard of Scoutcraft and resource is required. I have mentioned
just three examples, and you will readily realise that many more variations are possible.

The ideal time for a boy to join a Senior Scout Troop sufficiently well established to be able to plan ahead in the way I have just described is obviously just after No. 3. He will then do the easiest in his first year and be 17 years old when he tackles the most difficult. Thus, when the Scout Leader is planning these expeditions he has usually to stiffen the easy mountain walk type sufficiently to challenge the older boy, and the 15-year-olds going to the Cairngorms for their first Senior Camp have to be handled with thought fullness and understanding.

It may interest you to know that I encourage the boys themselves to look three years ahead so that they may know what is being planned and what opportunities are likely to be open to them.

Nothing is actually decided for so far ahead, but there is no reason why speculation should not take place. For instance, I have in mind a jaunt in Austria in 1964 with each Patrol going off on its own for 10 days and their aged Scouter remaining on tap at some comfortable hotel just in case difficulty or trouble or illness crops up. If I cannot wangle the hotel part of it, I shall certainly have a very pleasant base camp from which I will be able to enjoy long day base hikes and a bath in the evening. Now and again I may meet a Patrol and go with them high into the mountains. In 1965 I think we might indulge in another of these “education” jaunts like we did in 1956 to Denmark and Norway. I am toying with an invasion of France from the Channel Islands and so on through Brittany, down the coast of France to the Basque country for a week’s camp in the Pyrenees. Then back home via Paris. At present prices this would cost about £17 and take about 16 days. In 1966 I am very keen to take a really exciting hike in the Outer
Hebrides, starting at the south and working north for 10 whole days. This would be an operation of the most varied kind, and I wonder whether it will ever come off. It all depends on the enterprise and efficiency of our Troop.

All plans for your expedition must be carefully thought out. There are lots of things to think about, to look into and to arrange - tents and other items of Troop gear, the personal kit of the boys, the travel arrangements, foreign currency problems, food and menus, cooking and eating problems, Patrol organisation, preliminary hikes, cooking practice, leadership training, parental problems, costing, compass and map work and countless other concerns which you and the Court of Honour must tackle. These are the kind of things you must start on months before you actually set off. Many of these items contain heaps of snags, and the little book called “Mid Moor and Mountain” which Jim Westwood and I wrote in 1955 had the express intention of helping Scout Leaders and other leaders to plan expeditions on lines which we had found to be effective. As there is a whole book of it, it would be silly even to give a summary here - and quite impossible. The book can be bought at the Scout Shop for 7/6. So that you may know what it contains, here is a list of the chapter headings:

“MID MOOR AND MOUNTAIN”

Foreword by the Chief Scout.
Introduction.

Section “A”: Distant Views.

Section “B”: Whither shall we go?
(1) Hiking near home.
(2) Discovering England.
(3) Further a field.
(4) Still further a field.
(5) Summary.
Section “C”: How shall we do it?

(1) Leadership.
(2) Making the kit and the gear.
(3) Food, cooking and eating.
(4) Parents.
(5) Snags, Difficulties and Disappointments.

Section “D”: At the end of the day.

There are 178 pages, and this hook is dedicated - without permission - to our old friend Ben Macdhui, in recognition of his outstanding services to Senior Scouting. Naturally, all profits go hack to the Movement.

Since we wrote that little book, however, I have become rather concerned over three matters with regard to Senior Scout expeditions, and this seems to be a good opportunity to supplement what I have already written. First, I do not think our camping standards are nearly high enough. Most of you know this well enough and are quite competent to work out a remedy. I shall, therefore, confine myself here to five points, about each of which I have summarised a thought or two. These may help you to give a series of yarns to your Seniors prior to the preliminary camps at which the essential training for the summer expeditions takes place.

1. Tidiness in and around the tent. Have a special place for each of these items - (a) boots, rubber shoes, cleaning gear, etc., (b) rainwear and wet things, (c) washing gear and towels, (d) water bucket and basin - kept full, (e) orderly storage of plates, mugs, cutlery, dixies, fry pans, etc. Have a place for everything and keep it there.

“Everybody washes.”
2. Routine. (a) Everybody washes every morning and every night. (b) Meals are cleared away and washed up before rest. (c) Larders and gadgets are tidied up after every meal. (d) At night all is arranged to cope with emergency or evacuation (e) All routine is done smartly and efficiently - almost at the double - so as not to waste time, (f) “Tables” are completely laid before the start of meals and due manners are remembered.

3. Storage of food. (a) Divide the food into what needs protection and what does not. (b) Use of tins, bags, holes and meat safes up trees. A food box can usually be found locally, per Patrol, but bring butter muslin with you. Use a milk can if you have one. Pay special attention to milk. (c) Elastic bands are always useful and so is string.

4. Fireplaces. (a) Make area more than ample - brick or stone lined. (b) Clean away ashes every morning after breakfast. (c) Water grass surrounds every night and see that fire is really out.

5. Woodpiles. (a) Maintain graded piles. (b) Cover adequately. (c) Have an “axe” area. (d) No chips anywhere, please. Secondly, I have recently noted with concern how many camps and expeditions have been severely limited and frustrated by illness and accident. I am therefore listing below twelve suggestions which, in your own words, you may wish to pass on to your Troop just before you start off -

1. Keep warm - you tend to forget this on a boat, when busy, and when tired.

2. Wash all over every day. Extra care when drying feet and especially toes.

3. Keep kit dry - this includes other people’s - and the tent.

4. Cut out smoking.
5. Cure for exhaustion is (a) Eat,  (b) Get warm, and (c) Sleep when you get home.

6. Cut out the need for first-aid -therefore (a) open all tins with care, (b) be careful with the axe, (c) never leave your knife about, (d) never throw your knife about, and (e) do not throw anything about.

7. Report every accident and ailment to the leader of the party. Illness or accident spoils your holiday, plus that of at least one other fellow - perhaps of the whole party.

They also cause worry.


9. Pay particular attention to constipation and head-aches. Report any irregularity to the leader.

10. Keep your clothes as clean as possible. Wash under-clothes before they get too dirty. Wash dishcloths often. They should look clean as well as be clean.

11. Thoroughly air sleeping bags every morning. Best to use a sheet-bag as well.

12. It is the duty of everybody to keep hats. absolutely hygienic.

Lastly, I have been much saddened by the juvenile outlook, thoughtless behaviour and bad manners of some Senior Scouts when travelling abroad. Here are six points which should be the constant care of every Scouter and Patrol Leader:-

1. Representatives of Britain. Let other Britons be proud to see you about.
2. Saluting. Do this quite often. If not, bow slightly. Always do one or the other when asking questions, asking the way and generally when speaking to strangers.

3. Kit. Don’t leave it around anywhere, but only where it is not in anyone’s way. If there are many kits, stack them in straight lines in the least conspicuous way. When wearing kit take care not to be a nuisance - specially when turning.

“Specially when turning.”

4. Walking. No slouching ever. Tend to march rather than walk when on roads. When indoors or when sauntering in a village always carry yourself with an air of distinction. Learn what to do with your hands.

5. Uniform. When on a hike you can dress accordingly - even when passing through a village. But when a Scout visits a village to buy in or for any other reason, he must be in correct uniform. On journeys wear best uniform under your anorak. When necessary anorak can be taken off rolled up and strapped on to the back of your belt.

6. Manners and decorum. No shouting or singing in public- unless you can sing and the other people really want you to. This includes trains. Be careful not to laugh at people. Certainly no smoking in public. On train journeys enjoy the scenery to the full rather than read or play cards most of the time.

Leaving out the necessity of our Troops leaving a clean record behind them wherever they may go, always remember that the inculcation of tidiness, cleanliness, good manners, consideration for others and enthusiasm for learning as much as possible about new places, peoples, and customs is a vital part of the Senior Scout training, and we Scouters have a wonderful opportunity to do all
these things every time we lead an expedition. B.-P. said that the summer camp was the Scoutmaster’s greatest opportunity, and he is still right, you know. I commend the challenge to you all. Good luck in all your journeys - and many happy returns.
THE title of this chapter is, of course, the state of affairs this chapter is intended to prevent. You will have been told at Preliminary Training Courses and at Wood Badge Courses that there is only one thing worse than a hurriedly put together programme, and that is turning up to a Troop Meeting without a programme at all. Now, in Senior Scouting, this should be an absolute impossibility for the Scout Leader because he ought not to be worrying about the programme anyway (I bet most of us do, though)! This is the responsibility of the Court of Honour and I do advise you to get things working that way. I have done so for years and I know that it pays well in the end. Be prepared for disappointments, for unreliability and for ridiculous errors in timing. They will, however, learn in time,

I suggest we divide the Senior Scout training year into three periods -
1. 1st October to 31st December.
2. 1st January to Easter Camp.
3. After Easter Camp to the end of the summer camp.

I recommend that the programme for period 1 be formulated by the Court of Honour early in September and a Troop-in-Council held as soon as possible thereafter to pass the thing. Programmes should be copied for each Senior Scout for assimilation into his diary. If they do not use diaries, I suggest you tell them how. In this way they should have their programme for three months a fortnight before it starts. Do the same thing early in December and a month before Easter. It is easier to do it this way than to have an indecisive start and the inevitable excuses because “he did not know about it in time.”
I have in front of me three of “The Scouter Books,” - Nos. 1, 9 and 10 - a hundred ideas for Troop, Crew and Senior Scout Meetings respectively. I find all these useful and I commend them to you. But they must be used wisely. It is no use just scanning through them until you find something you like and putting it into that part of next week’s programme for which you are responsible. Being so haphazard will almost inevitably lead nowhere and frustration will follow. I have said in Chapter 5 every Scout must make up his own programme towards the Bushman’s Thong and the Queen’s Scout Badge and part of the general theme of Troop programmes must take these plans into account. You will want to include sundry courses of instruction on a variety of subjects, and these should be carefully timed and mapped out in advance. Nothing is so frustrating as a Badge Course which runs on and on and in the end fizzles out without any boy being tested.

Boys get fed up with this sort of thing, and rightly so. Similarly you will have a series of tests or inter-Patrol competitions, but do have a theme running through them and map the whole lot out at the start. This will save endless time as week follows week. You will want a special speaker now and again. Seek them out, and remember some will need three or four months’ notice.

Discussions are good fun, but it is no use asking a boy one week to hold forth the next. For one thing he will do himself more justice by longer preparation and the general discussion thereafter will be the better if there is plenty of notice. Games, too, ought to be run by the boys, but if you just say - “John, please run a game in ten minutes’ time” - you know what you will get - either “British Bulldog”, or some adaptation thereof, such as “French Poodle” or “Scotch Terrier”. I have a roster of Seconds responsible for games, but even that doesn’t work very well, and the Scouter will find that he will have to teach them one by one how to run a game.

In my little pamphlet, “Senior Scout Training in Hertfordshire”, which was issued to all Groups in our County in January, 1951, I set down sundry ideas to help the Court of Honour build up their
programmes. I suggest that those of you who have this pamphlet should look at it again. But, as it is out of print, it’s no use anybody writing to me for copies. Since then I have seen a lot more programmes worked out and carried through, and I think the best thing I can do here is to give you a detailed programme for a Troop of 12 boys for one whole year and also a complete year’s programme for a combined Troop of about 30. These are actual programmes and, in the main, they were carried out pretty well as planned.

Now for a spot of explanation and comment. First, some of you may be surprised at a meeting lasting as long as 2 ½ hours. I find this period just about right because a tremendous amount can be done in the time, and the boys go home feeling well satisfied. Many of you will doubtless be content with starting at 8 o’clock and finishing at 9.30. In this case I hope you do start at 8. Personally I always find it difficult to start on time - whatever that time may be. I know perfectly well this is bad and that I should do something about it. I do, and there is a temporary improvement, but.

These programmes have been prepared and used by the Troop I try to run, and I wish you to know we are not too well placed as regards Headquarters. From 7.30 we have the use of two connecting Church hall classrooms until such time as the Boy Scout Troop leave or get kicked out of the Hall - about 9.15.

“The Hall is quite small and for most of our active stuff we have to go outside, which is quite tricky in fog and rain. We are a suburban Troop and are surrounded by streets, but we are lucky in having a small brook running at the bottom of a nearby road of houses and this brook is most usefully lined with trees. Here most of our pioneer and venturer incidents are done. The Troop is a pretty fair cross-section - boys at work and boys at Grammar, Modern and
Technical schools. The Troop Leader is an apprentice engineer. The Scout Leader is of great age, of great proportions and not very energetic. I mention all this because you will want to know what kind of a Troop it was that actually carried out this particular programme. I therefore must remind you that it is a very ordinary programme suitable for a normal Troop of between 9 and 16 boys - 3 Patrols of 3, or 4 Patrols of 4, or even more.

Now let us examine the period from 1st October to 31st December. Patrol administration is carried out first, as any unpunctuality spoils the Patrol’s activity rather than the Troop’s. The Astronomer’s Badge class consists of 11 sessions in all and the course ends in mid-December so that the actual testing can take place either immediately before Christmas or during the Christmas holidays, which suits the schoolboys. The Instructors’ Course in the First Class Badge tests was given by me and although disguised by approaching these subjects from the Instructor’s point of view, it was, in fact, a very successful revision. The games periods - two of 10 minutes each - were looked after by the Seconds, and my experience is that they have to be continually stimulated and corrected if the Troop’s games are to have variety and purpose. The 20 minutes devoted to some sort of inter-Patrol competition was normally shared between the Scout Leader and the Troop Leader, with occasionally the District Commissioner or another Scouter taking over. A second period of 20 minutes was devoted to what is rather optimistically, and possibly humorously, called “culture”. Anyway the discussion is always great fun. Short items by parents or members of the Troop are always welcome and never very serious. Drama and story-telling give opportunities to some and are well worth putting into the programme now and again. You will notice that we had two special speakers during these 3 months. These evenings are always looked forward to, and it is very worth-while if the Scout-Leader takes a lot of pains to get interesting and well informed people. The atomic scientist thrilled us with some wonderful film and the barrister was magnificent in his anecdote and held the attention of us all until well after closing time. You will notice that the resource training
was put in late in the programme. This was done because we had the Hall from 9.15 onwards and because in winter it is so often necessary to put on a substitute indoor programme for that originally planned. This resource training is normally divided into three kinds - that centring round first-aid, that requiring pioneering gear, and thirdly, that which requires normal Scout uniform and common sense. As I mentioned, the trees lining our little brook provide wonderful opportunities for making bridges, swinging people across, either unimpeded or on stretchers, and for concealment. We know the potentialities of every tree. You will be interested to know that whenever we do a pioneering incident, a similar incident is staged for the following week. This is because I find that it is usually shockingly performed the first time and it is time wasted unless an early opportunity is provided to repeat the exercise after the Scouters have criticised the whole show and the Patrol Leaders have had time to re-think their plan of campaign. In all this training the Patrol is normally used as the unit. Sometimes two Patrols join forces. Usually the “patients” are Rovers or Assistant Scoutmasters in the Boy Scout Troop who love to return to our festivities when the younger boys have gone home. By these repeated first-aid and pioneering incidents a much higher standard of efficiency is gradually achieved and the power of command and confidence of the Patrol Leader wonderfully increased. It is also very good fun. The 5 minutes prior to 10 o’clock are fully utilised. The Troop Leader reads out the notices, the duty Patrol Leader leads the Troop’s prayers and then lowers the flag. The Troop Leader then dismisses the Troop. All in 5 minutes, you say? It is quite possible, provided the Troop Leader reads the notices and the Scout Leader refrains from commenting thereon!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>7.30 to 7.45</th>
<th>7.45 to 8.15</th>
<th>8.15 to 8.25</th>
<th>8.25 to 8.45</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sept. 16</strong></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Astronomer Badge Course Session 1</td>
<td>Instructor Course in 1st Class Badge, Re-pass and Kl. Badge (Whole course M(S))</td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S 23</strong></td>
<td>do. Session 2</td>
<td>do. Emergencies</td>
<td>Game by Des</td>
<td>do. Observation by T.L(S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S 30</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oct. 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANNUAL CAMP REUNION</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patrol Admin.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>do. Session 3</td>
<td>do. Bleeding</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>do. Scouting Quiz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patrol Admin.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>do. Session 4</td>
<td>do. Fractures</td>
<td>Chairman: Peter</td>
<td>Special Speaker—An</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patrol Admin.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition: Trees &amp; Birds T.L(S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>do. Session 5</td>
<td>do. Shock &amp; Triangular Bandage</td>
<td>do. Estimation</td>
<td>do. Signalling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nov. 4</strong></td>
<td>do. Session 6</td>
<td>do. 'Pioneering'</td>
<td>do. 'Journey'</td>
<td>do. 'Knotting'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N 18</strong></td>
<td>do. Session 7</td>
<td>do. 'Signalling'</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition 'Tracking'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>do. Session 8</td>
<td>do. 'Mapping &amp; Compass'</td>
<td>do. Test</td>
<td>Chairman: Barry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dec. 2</strong></td>
<td>do. Session 9</td>
<td>do. 'Journey'</td>
<td>Game by Des</td>
<td>do. 'Knotting'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>do. Questions</td>
<td>do. Test</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition 'Stars'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>do. Preliminary Test</td>
<td>do. Test</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D 23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D 30</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CHRISTMAS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PREPARATION FOR</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CHRISTMAS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jan. 6</strong></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Ambulance Badge Class Session 1</td>
<td>Abseiling from Trees</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>do. Session 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstration and practice of the Pioneer Badge Knots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feb. 3</strong></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Ambulance Badge Class Session 3</td>
<td>Demonstration of dressing a wound and practice on a second rabbit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>J 27</strong></td>
<td>do. Session 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Special Speaker—a member of the Chairman: Dave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F 10</strong></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Ambulance Badge Class Session 5</td>
<td>Improvised methods of carrying the injured—Backwoodsman Badge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>8.45 to 9.05</td>
<td>9.05 to 9.15</td>
<td>9.15 to 9.55</td>
<td>9.55 to 10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion:</td>
<td>'Colour Bar' by Peter</td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
<td>Resource Training 'First-Aid' by Mr. S.</td>
<td>Closing Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relay Race round lanes or round the houses</td>
<td>Quiet by Dave</td>
<td>Crime and Detection 'Murder of a Rover'</td>
<td>Closing Barry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SCOUT GATHERING**

**FOR WHOLE GROUP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>4-minute sketches by Patrols</th>
<th>Game by John</th>
<th>Resource Training 'Pioneering' by TL(S)</th>
<th>Closing Ronnie</th>
<th>Mitchell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atomic Scientist</td>
<td>Tea: Des</td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
<td>Resource Training 'Pioneering' by TL(S)</td>
<td>Closing Peter</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion— 'T.V. and Education' by Ronnie</td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
<td>Resource Training 'First-Aid by Mr S.</td>
<td>Closing Barry</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'My Hobby'— A Parent</td>
<td>Game by Des</td>
<td>Sing Song</td>
<td>Closing Ronnie</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GAME**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Rugby or Soccer by Barry</th>
<th>Game by John</th>
<th>Resource Training 'Pioneering' by TL(S)</th>
<th>Closing Barry</th>
<th>Scott</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Barrister</td>
<td>Tea: John</td>
<td>Game by Dave</td>
<td>Resource Training 'Pioneering' by TL(S)</td>
<td>Closing Ronnie</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Story-Telling by the Troop</td>
<td>Game by Des</td>
<td>Resource Training 'Pioneering' by TL(S)</td>
<td>Closing Peter</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion— 'Is the U.N. any good?', by Ronnie</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Crime and Detection, 'Fraud'</td>
<td>Closing Barry</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHRISTMAS GOOD TURN**

**GOOD TURN**

**PARTY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>9.10 to 9.30</th>
<th>9.30 to 9.45</th>
<th>9.45 to 9.55</th>
<th>9.55 to 10.00</th>
<th>Duty Patrol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'My Job' by a S.S.</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>10 minutes by S.M.</td>
<td>Closing Des</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gym—using improvised gear</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>Closing Peter</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BADGE EXERCISE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>9.10 to 9.30</th>
<th>9.30 to 9.45</th>
<th>9.45 to 9.55</th>
<th>9.55 to 10.00</th>
<th>Duty Patrol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A' Biography', by a Senior Scout</td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td>10 minutes by the D.G.</td>
<td>Closing Ronnie</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal Society</td>
<td>Tea: Derek</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>Closing Des</td>
<td>Scott</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion— 'Gardening soothes the mind', John B.</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>10 minutes by S.M.</td>
<td>Closing, Peter</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Event</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.30 to 7.45</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.45 to 8.25</td>
<td>Ambulance Badge Class Session 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Purification of water—Backwoodsman Badge and Preliminary Test in Pioneer Badge Knots</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.25 to 9.10</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Resource Training 'Pioneering'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>do. Session 7</td>
<td>Resource Training 'Pioneering'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>VISIT BY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FUN AND INDOOR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AMBULANCE BADGE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M 30</td>
<td></td>
<td>EASTER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>7.30 to 7.45</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incident</td>
<td>Incident</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Summer Expedition Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A 13</td>
<td></td>
<td>FATHER AND SON</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A 20</td>
<td></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A 27</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incident</td>
<td>Incident</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Summer Expedition Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Game by J.B.</td>
<td>Game by J.B.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td>VENTURER BADGE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part IV</td>
<td>Part IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Summer Expedition Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M 11</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIRST-AID</td>
<td>FIRST-AID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EMERGENCY</td>
<td>EMERGENCY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Whitson Camp Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M 18</td>
<td></td>
<td>WHITSUN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June 1</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TROOP</td>
<td>TROOP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 8</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 15</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>POTTED ATHLETIC</td>
<td>POTTED ATHLETIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPORTS</td>
<td>SPORTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 22</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 29</td>
<td>Game by J.B.</td>
<td>Game by J.B.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FISHER CAMP</td>
<td>FISHER CAMP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 6</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPECIAL SPEAKER</td>
<td>SPECIAL SPEAKER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A SCOUT FROM</td>
<td>A SCOUT FROM Norwa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NORWAY</td>
<td>Norwa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHAIRMAN: Des</td>
<td>CHAIRMAN: Des</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VISIT TO</td>
<td>VISIT TO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 13</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td>Patrol Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J 20</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td>FISHER CAMP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VISIT TO</td>
<td>VISIT TO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIRST-AID PRACTICE FOR SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>FIRST-AID PRACTICE FOR SUMMER EXPEDITION</td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td>FISHER CAMP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Slot</td>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Closing Contractor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.10 to 9.30</td>
<td>Compass Exercise</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Film of previous S.S. Expedition</td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gramophone Interlude</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.30 to 9.45</td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by G.S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.45 to 9.55</td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.55 to 10.00</td>
<td>Closing Dave</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Closing Ronnie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Closing Des</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANOTHER TROOP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GAMES EVENING</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRELIMINARY TEST</td>
<td>Game by</td>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T.L.(S)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ronnie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.15 to 9.30</td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by D.C.</td>
<td>by D.C.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.30 to 9.45</td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by T.L.(S)</td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.45 to 9.55</td>
<td>Crime and Detection</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Triple Murder'</td>
<td>by T.L.(S)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whitsun Camp Preparation in Patrols</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.55 to 10.00</td>
<td>Closing Des</td>
<td></td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CAMP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IN COUNCIL</td>
<td>Game by</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BADGE EXERCISE</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game by Derek</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Mitchell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by G.S.M.</td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discussion—'Co-education'</td>
<td>Game by</td>
<td>Scott</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by John</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game by Brian</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Malory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discussion—'How I would quit the world of the DC.' by Troop</td>
<td>Game by</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T.L.(S)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in A Venturer Badge Incident</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by C.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANOTHER TROOP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game by John</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>Mallory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Patrol Competition</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by C.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PREPARATION</td>
<td>Closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by S.M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The programme from Christmas to Easter has a slightly different framework. You will notice that the pioneering and such like activities come early in the programme. This makes a change and the boys are usually fresher earlier on. The “culture” part is just a continuation of the previous 3 months and although there was only one special speaker he was a very special one. You may notice that the programme after the special speaker has done his stuff is always planned to give him as creditable a display of Scoutcraft and Scouting as we are able to provide. There is only one games period, but it is for 15 minutes, which permits an intricate game to develop and a violent one to exhaust. You may ask about “the Scout Leader’s 10 minutes”. This period is mine to do as I wish. Sometimes I run a game if I feel it is needed, but most times I tell a yarn, read a cutting from the paper telling of heroism, comment on some aspect of Troop behaviour which needs alteration, read from “The Scouter” some article of interest, quote from a new biography which I have just read, or give extracts from The Times obituary which portrays a life of service, courage or distinction. As you will see, I sometimes invite the District Commissioner, the Group Scoutmaster, a Troop Leader or another Scouter to take my 10 minutes. I consider all this a very real privilege and a tremendous opportunity.

The period from Easter to the end of July is, of course, dominated by the preparations for the Summer Expedition. Various bits and pieces of the year’s work have to be polished off. For instance, in the programme I quote it is obvious that one or two boys were still needing practice in the Venturer Badge, Part 2. The choice of special speakers had a bearing on the Summer Expedition as do such items as first-aid revision. Other parts of the programme tend towards the very light hearted, and you will note that there are two
games periods each evening - a sure indication that the year’s activities are approaching their end.

Those of you who study this programme with care will note that usually an active item is followed by a quiet one and this is usually wise. Those very observant will note the various promotions which took place during the year. In concluding these comments, I wish to remind you once again that this is not a model programme for the simple reason that it was not prepared for a model Troop. Both you and I, if we sat down with pencil and paper, could produce a much better and balanced programme and one containing far greater variety of activity. It would, however, be an imaginary one for an imaginary Troop. This is a real programme and has all the attendant limitations and faults. Moreover it was often changed without notice.

Now let us discuss programmes for a large number of Senior Scouts. Combined Troops on a District or part District basis may well be the answer to a number of problems in starting Senior Scouting and we shall examine this matter in much greater detail in the next chapter. I ran a very happy Combined Troop for 2 ½ years and during the last year, the programme of which I am going to outline, there were 33 boys from 5 different Troops - 11 plus 4 plus 5 plus 11 plus 2. This large number allowed us to divide the Troop for instruction purposes into 13 first year boys, 9 second year boys and 11 third year boys. The type of programme was much the same as the one I have given in great detail and, therefore, I shall not waste space in doing so again. The instruction, however, given in the Combined Troop was on a far wider basis because of the age divisions mentioned above. Here is a list of the instruction classes organised during the year:-
Note 1
This Course was designed to train the older boys to become really efficient in teaching the First-class Badge tests. Later, in their respective Troops, they were to instruct the Patrol Leaders of the Boy Scout Troop. The subjects were as given in the previously detailed programme. (See my previous mention of the Senior Scout Instructor Badge in Chapter 9.)

Note 2
This Course was worked out and given by an experienced Cubmaster with a view to encouraging some of the 16 year old boys to become Cub Instructors. In 5 cases it had the desired effect. The Course included visits to several Packs in the District.

Note 3
Several of the Boy Scout Troops concerned were between 24 and 36 strong and the resulting testing weighed heavily on the limited number of Scouters available. As most of the Tenderfoot and Second-class tests are matters of fact, an intelligent Senior Scout is
perfectly capable of helping the Boy Scout Scoutmaster here. But they must know how to do it and, therefore, an experienced District Scouter gave this very interesting Course. Quite a few of the boys who took it became Assistant Scoutmasters. The programme was:-

1st evening: Tenderfoot tests (except Law and Promise).

2nd evening: Health section and Second-class Badge.

3rd evening: Observation tests. Trees.

4th evening: Knots. Axemanship.


Note 4
Lack of good Scouters is our crying need and one of the most magnificent results of Senior Scouting is the number of younger Scouters it is ploughing back into the Movement. You will already have realised from the above the stress I put in adapting our training to this end, and this additional scheme, which I have for years called “Cadet Scouter Training” is worthy of notice.

Discussions by the third year boys were led by me on subjects selected (by the boys) from the following:-

1. History of the Movement in relation to education and to the other voluntary Youth Organisations.
2. The nature of the 11-14 age group.
3. Difficult boys.
4. Basic training in the Boy Scout Section.
5. The proficiency Badge system.
6. The Patrol system.
7. Aims and methods of Scout camping.
8. Leadership training.
9. Relations between the Pack and the Boy Scout Troop.
10. Going up to the Senior Scout Troop.
11. Intention and value of Scout games and how to run them.
15. Equipment - Group, Troop and Patrol.
17. Programmes for week night meetings.
18. Week-end Scouting.
19. Functions and management of the Court of Honour.
20. Recruitment and keeping a balance in age groups.

This Course terminated by visits to 4 different Troops.

*Note 5*
This was quite an interesting experiment with the 16 age group, and I found much pathetically muddled thinking. What a lot a Scouter can do here! Here are the 5 topics we discussed:-

*1st evening:* What about this business of “absolute honesty”?

*2nd evening:* What about this business of “doing good turns at home”?

*3rd evening:* What about this business of “going to Church”?

*4th evening:* What about this business of “being well-mannered”?

*5th evening:* What about this business of “being clean”?

From the above you will realise that I favour what might be called “straight Scouting” programmes. Now and again we enjoy a
gramophone evening, or arrange a wild night out, but, by and large, I leave the boys to do such like activities at other times and in other company. There are many Troops who include table tennis, dances, instructional and educational visits and other highly diverting amusements in their weeknight programmes. It is all a matter of opinion and when I started Senior Scouting in London in 1946 I laid it down as a valid principle that the more things a fellow did under the influence of the Scout Law the better. Thus I arranged Senior Scout football, lawn tennis, athletic sports, cross-country races, table tennis and all sorts of things. Since then I have come to think that it is better to encourage our Scouts to take their place in the ordinary society of their neighbourhood and carry the Scout Law with them. Thus I am not annoyed, but quite content, when some of the fellows join a Youth Club attached to the Church, or the Tennis Club, or regularly support the dances led by a certain “Super Dance Band”. I think it a healthy sign, but there you are - two points of view - and I expect there is much truth in both. In any case it depends very much on local conditions what is open to the boys. If a new Club needs to be started in the locality, here’s your chance.

Here’s a chance for the Troop to be of real service to all the young people living around.

In conclusion I would just stress these few points. Get the Court of Honour to make their programmes well in advance and give each Scout a copy. Certainly study the examples I have given, but please note that they are only examples and your Troop must create its own - and better! I don’t doubt that the programme our Troop has compiled for this winter is very much better than the one I have given, but then I have been on sick leave for some months and have had no part in their fun and games. Senior Scout week night meetings must be great fun. Too much instruction will kill that fun. Too many games will lead to monotony and frustration. But a balanced programme will be looked forward to at the end of the week, a form of comic relief for the exam-conscious, a place to let off steam for the pent-up factory or office worker,
and even a “place de divertissement” for the harassed family Scouter. What a hope! But it must be fun!
Chapter 12
WHAT ABOUT THE “TWOS” AND “THREES”?

LET us now address ourselves to the problem of how to give Senior Scout training when there are only two or three boys over 15 in the Group.

I am not the sort of Commissioner who is out for efficiency at all costs and who is apt to reduce all problems to a matter of facts and figures. Scouting is essentially concerned with people. I am very well aware of the magnificent work done by those “lone” Scouter who run grand little Troops of between 10 and 15 boys. If it is a town or suburban Troop, he obviously limits his numbers from choice, but if he runs a village show he just cannot help himself if there aren’t any more boys. I so well remember the First Masstown in Nova Scotia where there were six more boys - 100% of the boy population of the village. As I say, these men do splendid work and, even if the smallness of the Boy Scout Troop inevitably leads to there being only two or three over 15, then it is surely up to the D.C. to give some assistance in this matter. What that assistance should be we shall examine later in this Chapter.

“There aren’t any boys.”

It is a regrettable fact, however, that there are many Groups which, though they always have Boy Scout Troops of between 24 and 30, never seem to have more than two or three boys over 15. There is no use running away from facts, and I consider that in nine cases out of ten such a Troop is badly run, and the Scoutmaster ought very seriously to consider whether he is in the right job within our Movement. All of us - whatever our function - must be prepared (even in a voluntary Movement) to be judged by the results which we achieve. If we find that the Troop which we are running and for
which we are responsible is not holding the boys and that this leakage, in spite of all we do, continues over the years, then we ought to go and do something else. I say this even though there is no one else to take over. The right man will seldom come forward until an actual vacancy exists. I do wish District Commissioners would be less sentimental in these matters. When an unsuccessful Scoutmaster sends in his resignation, it should be accepted - even though there is no one lined up to step into his job. This is a very difficult matter and often exceedingly painful, but in the Scout Movement the boys must be given Scout training in the Scout way - otherwise the whole thing becomes a caricature of B.-P.’s vision.

I have been forthright in this matter because it gives Senior Scouting one of its greatest problems and, although we Commissioners are often attempting to find a temporary solution - by taking each case separately Troop by Troop it is just plain silly not to point out more clearly the major problem, while seeking to resolve the residuary one. Now how do we give these “twos” and “threes” Senior Scout training? When you review what has already been outlined in this book - all the Bushman’s Thong and Queen’s Scout Badge training, the healthy mixing and competition with boys of his own age, the leadership training given through the proper use of the Court of Honour, opportunities of joining in corporate good turns, the adventure of making journeys to foreign lands, and the week by week fun of a busy Senior Troop meeting - it is as clear as clear can be that the lone 15-year-old in the Boy Scout Troop is missing an awful lot. However much the good man may try, it is quite impossible for the Boy Scout Scoutmaster to provide anything but a fraction of the opportunities I have just enumerated. Thus, the only solution lies in bringing these “twos” and “threes” together somehow or other. How is this to be done?

District Troops are now allowed and these may well solve our problem, in fact they have been permitted for this very reason.

Find a man who is good with the 15 to 17 age group (whether or not he has Scout experience) and challenge him to take on these
“twos” and “threes”. You can give him what warrant you like, but in actual fact he must fulfil several functions. Suppose you have bits and pieces like this - 2 from the First, 4 from the Third, 1 from the Sixth, 3 from the Seventh and 2 from the Ninth. This poor man - let’s call him George - must consider himself the Scout Leader of the First, Scout Leader of the Third, the Scout Leader of the Sixth, Scout Leader of the Seventh, and Scout Leader of the Ninth. He is going to be quite a busy man if all the Groups hold regular meetings of the Group Council, but it is regrettably unlikely because Groups like these seldom have any. So he need not worry! Each boy must look to him as his own Scout Leader, for, unless this personal relationship exists, the District Troop will fail before it starts. The boys will remain members of the First, Third, Sixth, Seventh and Ninth respectively, continue to wear their Group scarf and attend all Group Church Parades. They will form the Troop into 3 Patrols, possibly thus:-

First Patrol:  4 from the Third.

Second Patrol:  3 from the Seventh.

Third Patrol:  2 each from the First and the Ninth and 1 from the Sixth.

You may wonder why I have not made the Patrols equal with 4 members each. This could be done, but I am quite sure it would not work. And if you examine this matter you will doubtless see why.

Having divided the Troop into 3 Patrols, George will now call together his 3 Patrol Leaders and institute the Court of Honour. Now he is really getting somewhere! There now exists something which can attract loyalty and enthusiasm. Thus he and the Court proceed to run a perfectly normal Senior Scout Troop. Subscriptions will be paid presumably to both Troop and Patrol Treasurers and administered according to the will of the Troop and the Patrol respectively. The problems of camping gear may be tricky, but Districts may well be prepared to help out here and,
with the Scout spirit, they should easily be solved. Thus things will develop for, say, six months. Then if it is a good show some of the fellows in the Boy Scout Troop will become 15 and the District Senior Troop will grow. The first two Patrols may grow to 5 boys each and the Third Patrol - already 5 - may split into two, if there are even just two new fellows from the First, or the Sixth, or the Ninth - making 7 in all from these 3 Troops. As soon as any Troop has two complete Patrols in a District Troop, has a good man lined up to lead them, and George says that the remaining Troops in the combined show will not suffer too much from the breakaway, then the two Patrols should leave the District Troop and start off on their own. This goes on until there are 5 Senior Scout Troops each with a leader. George will be out of a job, but doubtless the District Commissioner will make him A.D.C.(S).

Now a few suggestions for George. I expect you will meet quite a lot of unexpected opposition to your little enterprise. I say “unexpected” because most of it will arise from misapprehension regarding the present, as well as fears for the future. The Group Scoutmasters may be concerned lest their boys are taken away from their Groups, and you must explain most explicitly that you are acting as Scout Leader in each of the Groups and are responsible to each Group Scoutmaster for the proper training of the Section. The Chaplain may be worried, especially if you belong to a different denomination of the Christian Church, so you must explain carefully that the boys will continue to attend his Church and will attend elsewhere only with his and their parents’ permission. If you are not a member of that Church you must be careful not to call yourself even an Acting Scout Leader of that Troop without permission - but you will do your best to do this job just the same.

“A spot of suspicion from the boys”.
You may meet a spot of suspicion from the boys themselves, but, if you suggest that both you and they try the thing out for a week or two, see how they like you and you like them (don’t forget to say the last bit) and genuinely have a bash at a thing which has proved a success in many Districts. The parents may wonder who you are and, naturally, will withhold their enthusiastic backing until they know you, and very rightly too. So visit the lot - it will most certainly repay you well. All these people are going to be very much in your debt, George, but they don’t quite see it in that light yet, so thicken your skin, at least temporarily. Of course, if you run into real trouble, you must consult the D.C. and do as he says.

The District Troop is, therefore, in my view, the best solution to the “twos” and “threes” problem. Please remember there must be a George, and George must be good. Otherwise don’t start because, if you fall at the first go, it is very difficult ever to make a second attempt. If a District Troop is not possible, then the only thing to do is to sacrifice the present boys who are over 15 and so run the Boy Scout Troop that this sad state of affairs passes. The Scoutmaster may say that in 12 months’ time he will have 7 boys over 15. Very well. Check up on this a year hence. I sincerely hope he will be able to start Seniors then. In the meantime, he must do his best to give his older boys as much Bushman’s Thong and Queen’s Scout training as possible, but please remember, he must not keep them Patrol Leaders in the Boy Scout Troop. If he does so, the 13 and 14 year old boys will probably leave and he will never have Seniors. I have seen this happen again and again. The Scoutmaster must use the over 15s to help him. They must not interfere at all with the proper Patrol Leaders, who must learn to run their own show in their own way. Otherwise they all get fed up and leave - and rightly so, for Patrol Leadership must not be a mockery, but real and splendid fun.

In the second paragraph of this chapter I mentioned the case of the small but good Boy Scout Troop, and it may well be that the District Troop idea does not appeal to the type of Scouter who
purposely keeps his Troop small and allows it to become a very individual and personal hunch of friends. If his older boys leave him to go to the District Troop, they may, to some extent, lose this close family spirit. So someone has to decide whether the gain counterbalances the loss. This question must never be answered by George, nor by the Scouter in question. I hope they will both do as the District Commissioner advises.

![Image: “Keeps his Troop small.”]

A small village Troop will always be a problem. When I came into Hertfordshire I was told by many that villages close to each other would never combine. I have found this to be absolute rubbish and I would like to quote chapter and verse, but, for obvious reasons, I had better not. Even in a Movement such as ours, which has a higher Scouter-to-Scout ratio than any other youth movement in the country, we cannot afford to waste our Scouters and it is just not a full Scouting job for an adult to be Scouter to 3 boys unless he is quite sure of having another 3 quite soon. Therefore, in the interests of efficient utilisation of our manpower, co-operation between villages - possibly on a semi-permanent District Troop basis - is well worth thinking about and I commend it to District Commissioners.

Anyway, good luck to you all - and especially to George!
CEREMONIAL has a place in the life of a Senior Troop. All the boys like to participate in ceremonies performed with dignity and sincerity, and, while the 15 year olds are commendably shy in taking part themselves, the older boys are usually very ready to learn how to conduct themselves on such formal occasions. They do, however, need to be taught how these things are done and the painstaking Scout Leader will have to instruct them.

The most important Senior Scout ceremonies are, I consider:-

1. The Advancement Ceremony from the Boy Scout Troop to the Senior Scout Troop.

2. The Investiture of a Senior Scout.

3. The Investiture of a Troop Leader, a Patrol Leader and a Second.

4. The Advancement Ceremony from the Senior Scout Troop to the Rover Crew.

Let us examine these one by one. Headquarters have prepared a little card giving full particulars of the first two and I am, therefore, reprinting them here:-

No. 1. Advancement Ceremony
Scouts assembled in double horseshoe, i.e., Boy Scout Troop form one horseshoe and Senior Troop form the other. Bases towards each other, but with ample space between. In centre stands G.S.M., S.M., S.S.L. or A.S.S.L. and Troop and Senior flags if available.

Candidate is brought forward by S.M. and stands before S.S.L.
S.M.: “I bring you John Smith, who has been a member of our Group for years. Will you accept him in the Senior Scout Troop?”

S.S.L.: “I am prepared to accept John Smith as a member of the Senior Scout Troop. John, YOU are now 15. Are you willing to become a member of our Senior Scout Troop?”

CANDIDATE: “I am.”

S.S.L.: “Are you prepared to continue working hard for your Initial Test or to complete your First Class in order to be invested as a Senior Scout?”

CANDIDATE: “I am.”

G.S.M.: “As a member of our Group you have to-day taken another important step forward. I have watched your progress in the past and I know I am going to be proud to see the success you make of your Senior Scouting in the future.”

S.S.L.: “On behalf of all the Senior Scouts I welcome you to our Troop.” (Shakes hands.)

(Introduces Candidate to his P.L.)

No. 2. Investiture Ceremony for Senior Scouts
Before Investiture the Candidate must have passed the Initial Test or hold the First Class Badge.

The Troop will be drawn up in horseshoe formation.

The Candidate comes forward unaccompanied.

S.S.L.: “John Smith, do you wish to be invested as a Senior Scout?”

CANDIDATE: “I do.”
S.S.L.: “Do you understand that in becoming a Senior Scout you will be expected to continue to set a high example, especially to the younger members of the Group and to show progress in your Scout life, and in your understanding and practice of the Scout Promise and Law at all times?”

CANDIDATE: “I do.”

S.S.L.: “Are you prepared to renew your Scout Promise realising your new responsibilities as a Senior Scout?”

CANDIDATE: “I am.”

S.S.L.: “Repeat after me.” (He administers the Promise and the Candidate repeats it after him - phrase by phrase. They then shake hands.)

“I trust you on your honour to do your best to keep this promise and may God help you in your endeavours.”

(Fastens Senior Scout epaulettes on Candidate.) “You are now a Senior Scout in our world-wide Brotherhood. I wish YOU many more years of adventure and happiness in Scouting.”

(He may be given a Senior Scout Enrolment Card, a Senior Scout Record Book, and his Senior Scout pin-type lapel Badge by the S.S.L.)

The Candidate turns and salutes the Troop.

The G.S.M. and other Scouters congratulate him and shake his hand. He then rejoins his Patrol.

(In the case of a Candidate who will be joining a separate Senior Scout Patrol, the P.L. presents him with his Patrol Patch.)
I think you will agree that these are just right as regards diction, length and purpose, and I commend them very strongly to you all.

It is quite in order to deviate slightly from these forms, but, quite candidly, I would hesitate very much before I altered or lengthened either of these ceremonies to any extent. Little variations, however, peculiar to each Troop are perfectly valid, and, if the Court of Honour show eagerness to propose any small alteration, I would suggest we Scout Leaders should encourage this most commendable interest in a matter which concerns them all and involves their sincerity.

The Investiture of a Troop Leader, Patrol Leader or Second is very important and Headquarters have rightly refrained from suggesting any standardized pattern, but have left these things to the good sense of the Court of Honour and the Scout Leader. In order, however, to provide a new Court of Honour with some idea of what other Troops do, I will now give you the essentials of the ceremony used in our Troop for the Investiture of a Patrol Leader:-

The Troop is standing at ease in a horseshoe formation with the Scout Leader and Troop Leader at the open end. The Troop Leader steps forward one pace and calls out “John Smith”.

John comes to the alert, leaves his Patrol, approaches the Troop Leader, salutes and stands at the alert before him. Then follows

TROOP LEADER: “Do you realise the duties of a Patrol Leader in a Senior Scout Troop?”

SMITH: “I do.”

TROOP LEADER: “Are you prepared to become a Patrol Leader of the Mallory Patrol in this Troop?”

SMITH: “I am.”
TROOP LEADER: “Are you prepared as a Patrol Leader to reaffirm your Scout Promise in the presence of your Patrol and of the rest of the Troop?”

SMITH: “I am”

(The Troop Leader then brings the Troop to the alert, receives the reaffirmation of the Scout Promise from John - the Troop saluting meanwhile - and then stands the Troop at ease.)

TROOP LEADER: “I trust you on your honour to keep this promise. You are now the Patrol Leader of the Mallory Patrol, and I sincerely congratulate you on behalf of the Court of Honour on your appointment. Here are your stripes and badges. Good luck!”

Then the Scout Leader and any other Scouters present shake the new Patrol Leader by the hand. The Troop Leader then gives the command - “ Patrol Leader John Smith dismiss”.

The new Patrol Leader takes a pace to the rear, salutes his Troop Leader and turns right about. The Troop Leader gives the command - “Troop salute”, to which Patrol Leader Smith replies, then “to your Patrol, quick march”.

(In most Troops I imagine the Scout Leader will assume the part taken here by the Troop Leader, and I would not have it otherwise unless the boys have so demanded and can adequately implement.)

Much the same sort of ceremony can be used for the Investiture of a Second. In our Troop the Patrol Leader of the new Second steps out to the open end of the horseshoe and invests his new Second himself. Otherwise the Scout Leader will do it.

The Investiture of a Troop Leader is normally done by the Scout Leader, and, once again, the ceremony can be in similar terms to the one I have detailed. A variation we often use is for the retiring Troop Leader to invest his successor as the last duty he performs as
Troop Leader. This is rather nice really. There are two minor, but quite important, points. You will notice that I require the Troop to stand at the alert only while the Scout promise is being taken. This eases the strain and breaks the ceremony at just the right places.

Secondly, if the boy being invested rehearses the ceremony with either the Troop Leader or the Scout Leader, there should be no cause for any sniggering which would otherwise ruin everything.

The fourth ceremony is that of the advancement of a Senior Scout to the Rover Crew.

“No cause for any sniggering.”

The Going-up Ceremony - Senior Scout to Rover
This is a new ceremony which has not appeared in print before; it covers the situation where a Senior Scout has reached Rover age and is going up into the Rovers.

It may not always be possible for the whole Crew to be present at the ceremony, but clearly this is desirable. The two sponsors, together with the R.S.L., must, of course, take part.
The Troop is in horseshoe formation, the S.S.L. at the centre, the R.S.L. and the two sponsors behind him facing the Troop. (See diagram.) The S.S.L. presents the Senior Scout to the R.S.L.

S.S.L.: “Jim Brown has .... years, service as a Senior Scout, and is now old enough to become a Rover Scout.

I recommend him as a fit Candidate, and I hope you will be prepared to accept him as a Rover Squire.”

R.S.L. to CANDIDATE: “Is it your own wish to complete your Scout training in the Rover Crew ?“

CANDIDATE: “It is.”

R.S.L.: “Then the Crew are willing to accept you as one of themselves.”

G.S.M. to CANDIDATE: “As Leader of the whole Group I want you to know how glad we all are that you are taking this further Step forward and we wish you happiness and success in your Rover Scouting.”

R.S.L.: “I invest you with this shoulder knot of yellow and green. The Colours of the Cub and Scout Section of the Brotherhood. That of the Rover Section - red - is missing to remind you that it is now your duty to prepare your self for full membership of the Crew: to which end I now entrust you to your sponsors who will assist you in your efforts.” (Sponsors shake hands with the candidate.) Candidate, with sponsors on either side of him, turns about, faces the Senior Scouts and salutes them - they salute him and give him three cheers, or the Troop yell.

If the Crew is present the ceremony can fittingly end by the Sponsors and the new Squire joining their ranks. Otherwise the ceremony concludes with the salutation and cheers mentioned above.
There are many other formal occasions. One is the presentation of Badges. As a Commissioner, I have the honour of presenting lots of Badges and I reckon now to have experienced everything in this connection - the really smashing salute which sends you staggering back, the easy smile, the hearty leer, the stamping of feet, the seasick slouch, and the case of utter panic. I like to see the boy walk out smartly, stop about two paces away and salute. This gives you a chance to come towards him. When he has got what is coming to him, I like him to take a step to the rear, salute, about turn and march smartly away, accompanied by the handclaps of the rest of the Troop, or the audience. Boys do these things well. When they see them done time and time again, they will know what to rehearse in the privacy of their room so as to make quite sure they do not get laughed at - the worse thing that can possibly happen in their estimation. Therefore the Scout Leader should ensure that no embarrassment is caused either to the boy or to the Commissioner and that the good name of the Troop and of the Movement is maintained in the eyes of the public and the press.

“Sends you staggering back.”

The presentation of important badges such as the Bushman’s Thong and the Queen’s Scout Badge requires much greater care and preparation. I think the local press ought to be there and parents and friends should be invited. The boys have done well to gain either award, and good publicity helps Troop tradition and future efficiency. Most of the boys will pretend to deplore such limelight, but don’t be deceived. They will be somewhat apprehensive beforehand, but afterwards they will be greatly bucked, say what they will. Therefore. If there is going to be publicity, please see that every detail is arranged beforehand, that the boys are in correct uniform, that they have had a haircut and they know exactly what to do and say.
At each Troop Meeting there are the opening and closing ceremonies, and very often I am afraid we Scout Leaders don’t take sufficient care to ensure that both are dignified and are properly performed. There are no official rules laid down in these matters and most Troops will have evolved their own tradition. To help new Troops I will outline the procedure that I have seen practised for years. First of all, the breaking of the Union Flag. The Duty Patrol makes the flag and its Patrol Leader breaks it. This usually prevents a contretemps. There can be few more embarrassing situations than a flag which refuses to break when visitors or another Troop are looking on. Likewise when lowering the flag at the end of the meeting, do not start the ceremony until the duty Patrol Leader has unwound the rope and is ready actually to lower.

When the Duty Patrol Leader has lowered the flag and arranged it somewhere without touching the ground, he will about turn and face the Troop.

The Troop Leader will then give the order “at ease” and the Duty Patrol Leader will lead the Troop’s prayers. After doing so, the Duty Patrol Leader will salute the Troop Leader and return to his Patrol. The Scout Leader will then order the Troop Leader to dismiss the Troop and he will return their salute. Lastly, the Troop Leader will turn towards the Scout Leader and salute him.

A tidy start to a meeting and a tidy ending makes all the difference and, of course, any undignified treatment of our flag is to be strongly deprecated. There are Scout Troops who have not learned to stand still, even during a short ceremony, and the Scout Leader must be quite ruthless in such cases. They are no longer children and you just won’t stand for baby behaviour.

Now a word about Church Parades. I have never been enthusiastic about marching Boy Scouts, and Seniors are little better unless carefully trained. Such training cannot be given in ten minutes. I certainly think Seniors ought to be able to march as well as, or better than, our friends in the Boys’ Brigade or the various Cadet
Forces. They can and will if you show them why and take a firm hand with a possibly frivolous minority. Keep the pace short, teach them to hold their heads up, and get them to keep their shoulders back. If this is done in good time, marching to Church and to St. George’s Day Parades need not be the Scouter’s nightmare they usually are.

Carrying Colours cannot be undertaken without careful rehearsal if it is to be done properly. The Colour Bearer must know exactly what to do and the remainder of the Colour Party must act as one man and not either follow the leader or execute a series of independent and differing movements. The same care must be taken to instruct boys how to take up the collection and proceed to have it dedicated. Pray impress upon them that they must not hurry and I think real skill in all these matters is indicated by the arrival of the Colour Party or offertory bearers at the altar steps or communion table at exactly the right time as denoted by the organ music or the singing. This is quite an art and can give immense satisfaction.

"Take up the collection."

Sometimes a Senior is nominated to read the lesson at a Church service and he will probably be very nervous. You will help to allay that nervousness by a sympathetic rehearsal, which will include telling the boy when he will have to leave his pew, what to do regarding bowing to the altar, how to read slowly and well, how possibly to announce the next hymn and, lastly, to return to his pew with dignity, but without ostentation. A Senior Scout is tremendously grateful for help such as this. Senior Scouts also require instruction as to what they ought to do when a National Anthem is played or sung. You must not be vague, for there are definite rules about these things. Above all, please let it be a point of discipline to stand absolutely still. Our Movement is frequently judged by the behaviour of its members on occasions such as this.
One final word. We Scouters do the boy quite a considerable service if we accustom him to acting alone in public. So many grown men make an awful mess of it, but, if a boy is gradually instructed, he will acquit himself with credit. Later on, such assurance may serve him well and enable him to discharge public obligations without bombast, but with brevity and distinction.

Should you need any further information upon matters to which I have referred in this chapter, especially about Senior Scout Ceremonies, I strongly recommend the pamphlet entitled “Ceremonies of the Scout Movement” published by Headquarters.
THE points I have tried to make in the last Chapter lead inescapably to the question of the smart wearing of our Scout uniform. I work in Buckingham Palace Road and from my window - especially in the summer time - I see all sorts and conditions of men and boys wending their leisurely way to the Scout Shop at Headquarters. The sights we see! Many a time I have held my hands to heaven wondering whether what I saw was really true.

Many is the time I have wished to go out and tell the offenders how shockingly they were disgracing our Movement. I often wonder how those patient men and women behind the counter in the Scout Shop (themselves dressed smartly in proper Scout or Guide uniform) maintain their politeness (and even remain in the Movement) when they have to serve these apparitions in fancy dress. Senior Scouts are about the worst. I suggest, therefore, that we devote this chapter to thinking how our uniform should be worn and when.

I am old fashioned and deplore the beret, but it has obviously come to stay and all I ask now is that it should be worn as it is by the Royal Tank Corps, the Parachute Regiment and the Commandos, and not as by emotional film stars either male or female. It should also be regularly brushed.

There is no reason at all why a Senior Scout should not iron his scarf himself and so have it looking tops every time he wears it. Few do and even then rely on Mum. Scarves are thus only ironed when they are washed and that is obviously seldom. The Scout scarf is a picturesque and colourful feature of our uniform and attracts attention. I suggest it attracts more attention by the boys. Please don’t think I am urging the laying aside of scarves when the
Troop goes into action - Patrol against Patrol. Besides being part of our uniform it is also a valuable item of equipment. Certainly let them be used in all sorts of ways. All I ask is that they be washed and ironed far more frequently.

If you want to be unpopular, one way is to insist that everybody wears a white lanyard. I think it is a splendid idea and I much prefer white because it then needs to be washed every week. This operation only takes two minutes at most and the training value is great. A clean white lanyard sets off a coloured scarf splendidly and greatly adds to a smart appearance.

Shirts often look grubby, but my chief complaint is the faulty arrangements of the Badges. If you notice this in your own Troop, please point out each mistake carefully and next week remember to verify that it has been attended to. The Appendix to P.O.R. shows the correct way. To overlook these things is quite fatal.

I suppose it is as much as my life is worth to write what I think about some woggles, but I think it is an awful shame to have to sacrifice poor pussy for this purpose. Jamborees cause a lot of trouble in this connection - witness the monstrosities which returned from Canada in 1955. In our Troop we all use a sawn-up antler which, so rumour has it, came from a stag shot by Davy Crockett in the New Forest!

Now for shorts. Many shorts do not seem to have loops for the belt and before long the result is almost indecent. Insist on their being put on. Most shorts are too long and need severe pruning. Although we do not need to copy the abbreviations prevailing in some parts of Europe where the gap between the bottom of the shorts and the top of the socks is measured in metres, I do suggest that wide short shorts are much smarter than narrow long ones.

“Need severe pruning.”
Scouters should see that their Seniors wear shorts that really fit them - a happy medium between too short and too long. It should never be necessary for Scouts to turn up their shorts - a practice that should be stopped in no uncertain manner.

I wonder what you think about garter flashes! Personally I think them plain silly when worn long. I always remember seeing a Scouter on a train journey who, because of his very long shoulder knot, his long garter flashes and the coloured cord attached to his thumb stick, looked just like Malvolio! No wonder people laugh and think us odd!

It is funny how boys so frequently forget all about their shoes. So do the Teddy Boys, who lavish so much money on hair styles, millinery, suits and socks, but seem always to forget to clean - let alone polish - their shoes however extravagantly patterned the leather thereof may be. We must surely do better than that.

So much for our uniform. Now a word concerning a matter about which I feel even more strongly. I deplore the jacket habit which has crept into the Movement - especially among us Scouters and the Seniors. Last year I was walking alongside the Serpentine in Hyde Park on one of the few really sweltering days we had, and I was thinking how lovely it would be if I could take off my jacket and waistcoat and get some fresh air about my arms and chest. While thus thinking rude things about the correct dress for men when doing their duty at an afternoon tea party, I met three Senior Scouts each of whom was wearing a tweed jacket over his shirt. Poor fools - especially when they didn’t need to.

I appeal to all you Scouters to set an example in this matter and to insist that your Senior Scouts wear no pullover or jacket or anorak or anything else over their shirt in the summertime. They look infinitely smarter without them, provided they know how to wear their uniform. Furthermore, I maintain that gent’s natty suitings do not savour of the backwoods. Some of the boys talk about looking
silly in shorts! They certainly do when they wear a lounge suit jacket as well!

In the cold weather it is plain silly to get a cold when you don’t need to and very often an “outer garment” is necessary. The Scout Shop supply one at quite a moderate price and, if a boy saves up sufficient money, he can buy himself a really posh Grenfell jacket. There are lots of similar garments in the shops and, as long as bright colours, even maroon, are avoided, I think each Senior Scout should try to get one so as to look smart on special occasions.

My experience is that when a boy really wants to look smart he is quite willing to suffer in doing so. You see the sacrifice taking place in the freshly qualified Queen’s Scout and, on balance, I like to see it. If a boy wears two or even three short-sleeved pullovers underneath his shirt he won’t come to any harm however cold the weather - especially if he keeps moving and the rain holds off. At the Windsor St. George’s Day Parade this is the rule, and I wish Districts and Troops would follow suit. I just don’t believe the boys in our Senior Troops are any less hardy than we were 20, or 30, or 40 years ago. It is just a question of leadership - that of the Scout Leader and the Patrol Leader.

Now let us examine this question of when to wear uniform. I think some of us older Scouters tend to be unreasonable in this matter and hark back to the old days when, unquestionably, we wore uniform oftener than is done to-day. I really don’t think there is any absolute need to wear uniform to go to the Gang Show, to a Scout dance, or to a party. Always remember that ladies in party frocks take a poor view of catching their “accessories” in Scout belts and the like. I therefore put in a plea for more normality.
When asked for a ruling in this matter, I always lay down this principle: let us dress according to the activity. I think this is sound and suits us Scouters very well. To play football we wear football togs; if we indulge in cross-country running we wear athletic dress; if we take up rock climbing we will wear boots, old long trousers, and an anorak; if at a Troop Meeting we are going to climb trees, or do pioneering, or have a fight, we wear our oldest Scout clothes, boots, and an anorak; if the evening is a special one when the Troop is entertaining a guest speaker, then posh uniform will be worn, shoes specially polished and everything made on the top line in honour of the guest. This is just good manners. If you are having an evening entirely devoted to cultural activities, then – according to our principle – it is not necessary to get into uniform, because you don’t need to wear shorts to listen to a gramophone. But if this is decided for one particular evening, the boys must do without their period of robust games – which may well be considered a pity.

We have to be sensible on these matters and I always hesitate to make an issue of it. Some boys turn up with “longs” over their shorts.

Well, they may have bad colds, but the truth is much more likely to be that they are scared of being seen in shorts by their girl friends. There is only one answer to this. They must be persuaded that they do, in fact, look really smart in Scout uniform and that people are not really laughing at them at all. So here we are where we came in!

“Being seen in shorts by their girlfriends.

Thus, the Scout Leader and the Court of Honour must weigh up the pros and cons. Is it worthwhile losing a boy on this uniform question? We must remember that those boys who are most obstinate in this connection are often just the boys who need
Scouting most. On the other hand, once the Court of Honour has made its decision as to what is to be worn on this or that occasion, or as a general rule, then discipline and the 7th Scout Law must operate. Loyalty and duty to the Troop are invoked and no disobedience can be tolerated. So it comes to this once more: it all depends on the foresight, the discipline and the wisdom of the Court of Honour and the Scout Leader.

Finally, I would make mention of the matter of the wearing of long trousers by Senior Scouts and cannot do better than refer you to P.O.R. 286, on this subject.
Chapter 15

SENIOR SCOUT PATROL NAMES AND THEIR EMBLEMS

SENIOR Scout Patrols are called after seventeen men chosen for their great gifts of leadership, achievement, daring, and courage. Heroes all. It may help Scout Leaders to see clearly in tabular form the nature of the choice open to the Patrols in their Troop.

I hope every Patrol Leader, having consulted carefully with his Patrol, will choose a man that makes a great appeal to them all. I hope they will read all about him and fly from their tent his emblem. These are in the form of little pennants and can be purchased very cheaply from the Scout Shops. I also hope Scout Leaders will see to it that the virtues of these men are upheld in the Troop and that this method of distinguishing Patrols may prove an increasing inspiration to us all.

“I hope they will read all about him.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patrol Name</th>
<th>Short Biographical Note</th>
<th>Patrol Colours</th>
<th>Patrol Emblem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>James Cook</td>
<td>Brilliant Navigator who Circumnavigated the world.</td>
<td>Dark Blue</td>
<td>Silhouette of a Sextant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dark blue for the ocean and gold for scientific instruments.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrol Name</td>
<td>Short Biographical Note</td>
<td>Patrol Colours</td>
<td>Patrol Emblem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles Darwin</td>
<td>Famous Scientist and Founder of the theory on evolution which bears his name.</td>
<td>Green/White</td>
<td>A Beagle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Wilfred Grenfell</td>
<td>Pioneer Medical Missionary in Labrador.</td>
<td>Black/Gold</td>
<td>Newfoundland Schooner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrol Name</td>
<td>Short Biographical Note</td>
<td>Patrol Colours</td>
<td>Patrol Emblem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERIC LIDDELL</td>
<td>Well-known sprinter who won an Olympic Gold Medal and who later became a Missionary in China.</td>
<td>White</td>
<td>Winged Heel of Mercury and a Cross.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mission work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sporting Field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAVID LIVINGSTONE</td>
<td>Explorer and Pioneer Medical Missionary in Africa.</td>
<td>Brown</td>
<td>Lion’s Head.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEORGE MALLORY</td>
<td>Brilliant mountaineer who was last seen high on Everest.</td>
<td>Brown</td>
<td>Ice axe and Coiled Rope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Snow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. J. MITCHELL</td>
<td>Aero-Engineer and Designer of the Spitfire.</td>
<td>Light Blue</td>
<td>Spitfire Silhouette.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Light Blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrol Name</td>
<td>Short Biographical Note</td>
<td>Patrol Colours</td>
<td>Patrol Emblem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain R. F. Scott</td>
<td>Famous Antarctic Explorer who died returning from the South Pole.</td>
<td>Dark Green / Light Blue</td>
<td>Sledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lord Somers</td>
<td>The Second Chief Scout and a very Gallant Gentleman.</td>
<td>Gold / Dark Blue</td>
<td>Stag's Head.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Representing his endeavours and his taking Scouting into new places.
Green: Colonies Gold: Treasure
The Southern Oceans and the Ice Cap.
Representing Scouting, Oxford and Sporting Culture.
N.B.- The Patrol Patch is worn at the top of the left sleeve immediately below the shoulder seam, the first-named colour being at the top along the seam and facing front.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patrol Name</th>
<th>Short Biographical Note</th>
<th>Patrol Colours</th>
<th>Patrol Emblem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>George Stephenson</td>
<td>Inventor of the Steam Engine.</td>
<td>Red Blue</td>
<td>&quot;Rocket&quot; Silhouette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gino Watkins</td>
<td>Arctic Explorer of amazing versatility.</td>
<td>Light Blue White</td>
<td>Kayak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr. Edward Wilson</td>
<td>A brilliant Artist and Naturalist and Antarctic Explorer with Captain Scott.</td>
<td>White Light Blue</td>
<td>Husky.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WITHOUT question this is going to be the most difficult chapter in the book to write and I am very conscious of my own inadequacy in this matter. It is quite clear, however, that a large number of Scouters is waiting – and needing – a lead and I am therefore going to do my best to write something that will be useful.

The Scout Law forms only a part – though a very important part – of the Scout Promise. In the same way a moral code is only part of a vital religious faith. Religion contains and is greater than morality and likewise our Promise contains and is greater than our Law. Most of our Scouts have only the vaguest of ideas about God and any mention of His love, sacrifice and power means so little to so many of them. Therefore the law we must hasten slowly. We must seek to lead them step by step. I suggest therefore that we take the Law first and then, after examining its implications, tackle the most difficult of all our problems and privileges – helping each boy intimately to know God.

The Scout Law
Quite candidly, I don’t believe many Seniors think very much about the Scout Law. It is usually related to theory and is an object for occasional discussion rather than a standard of conduct in full and vigorous operation every day of their lives, as well as being a vital tool and a yardstick in deciding the activities and tradition of the Troop. I really don’t think it is much use discussing the Laws one by one at a Troop Meeting, or the Scout Leader giving a series of yarns.

Such treatment tends towards the academic and does not get to the root of the matter. The Scout Leader somehow or other must relate the ten Scout Laws to the every day life of the Troop. When he sees something wrong he must pounce on it right away and invoke
the relative Scout Law, either to the boy concerned or to the Troop as a whole. He is then dealing with an actual happening requiring an immediate decision. He and the Troop will find this very difficult - but then life is like that. I therefore suggest that we now take each Law in turn and see how it can affect the corporate life of a Senior Troop and in what ways a Scout Leader may help to make its influence felt.

1. A Scout’s HONOUR IS TO BE TRUSTED
B.-P. in “Scouting for Boys” went on to say:- “If a Scout says ‘On my honour it is so,’ that means that it is so, just as if he had made a most solemn promise.

“Similarly, if a Scouter says to his Scout, ‘I trust you on your honour to do this,’ a Scout is bound to carry out the order to the very best of his ability, and to let nothing interfere with his doing so.

“If a Scout were to break his honour by telling a lie, or by not carrying out an order exactly when trusted on his honour to do so, he may be directed to hand over his Scout Badge, and never wear it again. He may also be directed to cease to be a Scout.”

I think I am right in saying that we don’t hear very much talk like this to-day. In 1916 when I joined the Scouts we boys did quite often challenge “Scout’s honour” among ourselves. There is no room here to discuss the implications of this very obvious change of outlook, and I will therefore content myself with suggesting that to-day we like to think that Scout Law No. 1 means that what a Scout says at any time is absolutely true. He does not lie. He is straight. I am afraid, however, that many of our boys have a very loose conception of what is honest, what is a lie, and what is straight.

First, many of our young men are not a bit ashamed of telling you how they “won” that fountain pen or that book.
“Winning” things is often an accepted way of getting what you want. Thus when you hear about one of your young men telling how he knowingly accepted 5/- too much change at a shop, you must step in with the first Scout Law and insist that the boy pays back the 5/- on the morrow. When a boy produces a library book which he admits to taking away from the Library “months and months ago” and has seemingly got away with it, you must not pass it by. You must take notice and see that the book is returned forthwith. These two examples will serve to show the kind of thing I mean. In Denmark last year our Scouts discovered that halfpennies fitted very adequately into kroner slot machines and the fact that I twigged this before the supply of halfpennies was exhausted was considered most unfortunate. I had the last laugh, however, as a tin so obtained and thought to contain coffee essence was, on experiment, found to be brown boot polish. The wages of sin sometimes sicken. What fun we all have!

When the travel facilities for a Summer expedition are being applied for and it is obvious that every penny must be saved, you may have to divide the Troop into two sections - under and over 16. Please remember that although a boy is but one day over 16 on the day you travel, he is over 16, and the extra fare must be paid. Any weakening by you is quite fatal. I once had to face a very irate father who had, in consequence, to pay £3 more on the railway fare than he expected. I was a very young Scouter at the time and I think the Group Committee supported me with great reluctance. Of course, I had to win - and I did. This stand did more for Scouting in that Group than I could possibly have foreseen. Therefore, if you hear boys bragging about gaining admittance to swimming baths and the cinema at reduced rates when they have no right to do so, you must not pass it over, or pretend not to hear. You must take action. The same applies, of course, to their abusing the various children’s concessions in Public Transport.
I have discussed in an earlier chapter how essential it is that a boy should own up to slackness and not offer excuses. It is surely a most sorry commentary on the Troop spirit if lies and deceit exist within it.

For some reason or other to avoid paying Customs Duty is often regarded as a feat worthy of bragging about. When a Troop of Scouts arrives for Customs examination I always find the Customs people – British or otherwise – most obliging and eager to pass us through. It would be so easy to take advantage of this. I hope no Scouter or Patrol Leader or Senior Scout would ever stoop so low. When returning home with presents I make a list of all dutiable articles valued at roughly over 10/- and either read it off or show it to the Officer. I have always been treated with exemplary courtesy and I commend these methods to you. All this is a vital part of the Scout training.

In all these matters I am afraid we in the Scouts may be taking a somewhat lonely stand. That makes no difference. The parents may be actively hostile or slightly annoyed and the boys may be faced with a clash of loyalty. None of these things can alter what is honest and what is wrong. Is the Scout Law to be made a mockery? In your hands does the answer lie.

“Treated with exemplary courtesy.”

2. A Scout is LOYAL TO THE QUEEN, HIS COUNTRY, HIS SCOUTERS, HIS PARENTS, HIS EMPLOYERS, AND TO THOSE UNDER HIM

B.-P. adds - “He must stick to them through thick and thin against anyone who is their enemy, or who even talks badly of them.”

Loyalty to the Queen
I think on balance boys to-day have a sounder opinion of the Police than they did when I was a boy. As far as I can remember, the
Policeman was more feared than anything else. To-day relations between our Movement and the Police are exceedingly cordial and close and relations between Policemen and Scouts are usually happy. This is right and in line with our loyalty to the Queen. When it comes to actual happenings, our loyalty to the Queen is expressed almost entirely by our attitude to authority and one of the Scout Leader’s jobs is to ensure that the Troop realise their duty is to assist in keeping order in our land - not the opposite. Scouts are on opposite sides to those young hooligans, by no means all dressed in Edwardian gear, who make a nuisance of themselves in our streets, in our cafes and in our cinemas. Scouts do not seek trouble by thrusting their services forward, but they do act – and act swiftly – if old people, girls, or children appear in any danger.

“Exceedingly cordial.”

The other aspect of loyalty to the Queen, which I am sure is not an empty gesture, is the very personal loyalty which each Senior Scout - especially each Queen’s Scout - feels towards our Queen. She is a lady, who, by her hard work and charming grace, is the very essence of royalty to which every decent young man will respond with respect and unaffected loyalty. This aspect, I believe, needs no word from us - just complete acceptance.

Loyalty to his country
The general knowledge of many of our Seniors is very limited, and, if we Scout Leaders can help them towards a better understanding of the world, its peoples and its problems, we shall be doing these young men a great service. There has been a tendency among a certain section of our people - in the words of “Koko” in “The Mikado” - “to praise every country but their own”. This has nothing whatever to do with politics (which, incidentally, I believe should not be barred in a Senior Troop), for the more we seek to understand history, the more we realise the value of the British contribution to world progress. I, anyway, am completely
convinced that we have real cause to be proud of our country whether it be Scotland, or England, or Ireland, or Wales, or elsewhere. If we are proud of our country let us say so and act accordingly. It is sometimes possible to include in the ordinary programme a discussion or a talk - or even a series of them - covering these matters, but in my view we Scout Leaders can best use our influence and knowledge by the attitude we take up and the comments we make on a hike, round the camp fire, at table after the evening meal, or during a long train journey. In a foreign country where comparisons crowd upon us, it is then that the beliefs and comments of the boys become of interest and importance.

Loyalty to his Scouters
I suppose we have all been humbled by the loyalty and admiration which - however undeserved - is so often bestowed on the Scout Leader by the boys in his Troop. How many times does he get told by parents that he seems to have far more influence than they. This, of course, is perfectly true, but, if we are to preserve a sense of proportion, we must always remember that this respect is not always sustained. You may ask what happens then. It depends entirely on the sense of proportion and the sense of honour of the Scout Leader and his loyalty to the boys. He must realise that it is not essential to expect that each boy will be loyal to him personally, but it is essential to expect that each boy is loyal to the office of Scout Leader. If a boy talks about you behind your back, or is otherwise disloyal, by far the best way to tackle the matter is for the Patrol Leader or even the Court of Honour to put the boy right. If this does not happen, then the Scout Leader must try, as objectively as possible, without any bitterness, in a quiet voice and with a smile, to show to the young man how loyalty due to leadership must transcend any personal animosity that may creep in. (How I wish we Scouters would remember this ourselves when thinking, dealing and writing to our brother Scouters.) You are bound to have this kind of problem some time or other, but, by and large, I expect you will be splendidly sustained by the loyalty of your boys. Just because it is so very wonderful and worthwhile, it
behoves us sometimes to put such a high value on it that if we feel it to be lacking or inadequate, we immediately take urgent steps at the Court of Honour to seek the reason why.

*Loyalty to his Parents*

A boy’s loyalty to his parents does not mean just being useful at home. Loyalty to Mum and Dad is on a much higher level than that. Normally, this part of our Law seldom enters the corporate life of the Troop and the Scout Leader’s duty is restricted to the occasional comment on not wasting Dad’s money, or doing things that would wound and perhaps shock his Mother. Now and again we Scouter have to cope with the unhappy and divided home where loyalty to both parents at once can be almost a heartbreak. To a boy of Senior Scout age this may turn out to be emotionally more than he can stand and, in this case, while the Troop must quietly stand behind him in mute sympathy, the Scout Leader may have to give a much clearer lead. The decisions taken on such occasions may have far reaching effects on a boy’s character and emotions, and I advise the Scout Leader to consult those who are wise, discreet, and who possess the amazing power of love. Guided by them - let us hope the chosen instruments of God - he may serve the boy at a major crisis of his life.

*Loyalty to his Employers*

The loyalty of a boy to his employers is not usually affected by any decisions made by the Court of Honour regarding Troop progress or the like. It is affected largely by the tone of the Troop and the standard of honesty it corporately tries to uphold. When a boy is starting work for the first time, he may find the attitude of his workmates to skimping jobs, to “winning” things, to reporting a job as taking 4 hours when it actually took 2 ½, as being quite contrary to what he knows to be right. If on consulting his friends in the Troop, he finds that they do these things too, he may well give up the battle before it starts. So you see how important it is for the Patrol Leaders to be straight - see my notes in Chapter 3. They can help and you can help. But how difficult it is. I know, because I, too, have realised the shame of accepting overtime money I
never earned and it was not until I made a break that I learned that my friends at work took a mighty poor view of me until I did so. I learned then, as I learned later on while in the R.A.F. during the War, that men have a tremendous admiration for the Scout Movement and are quite harsh in their judgement on those of us who let the side down. There are, of course, many exceptions to this and I know perfectly well how difficult - nay almost impossible - it is for a young man to go against his mates and even against his Union. I cannot generalize or give any advice save that with God all things are possible. Time and time again we Scout Leaders can help, and I hope we will. This is one of the occasions when the boy needs the strong hand of an older man.

*Loyalty to those under him*

The loyalty or lack of it of the Seniors to the Scouts and the Cubs is quite often a subject for discussion and decision by the Court of Honour. You all know the kind of things that can happen and how the good example or the bad example of the Seniors and Rovers affects the Scouts and the Cubs. There is no need for me to discuss them here. All I need do is to emphasize that this example and this loyalty are of the greatest importance.

I am writing this chapter on the eve of the Centenary of the birth of B.-P. and I wish to add a word about loyalty to our Movement. It is a very wonderful Movement that has been handed down to us Scouters by B.-P., and we, in our turn, will hand it on to younger hands. I think our Seniors are quite mature enough to be treated as if this heritage is gradually becoming their responsibility and privilege. Loyalty to Scouting may mean so many things, but obviously it must include its continuation, its vitality, its capacity to move with advancing knowledge and the determination of all its members, both young and old, to work as a team. It also implies that we must change our jobs periodically according to years, experience and wisdom. When a Troop corporately feels part of the Movement in terms such as these, it is bound to be worthy of the heritage given to it by B.-P.
3. A Scout’s DUTY IS TO BE USEFUL AND TO HELP OTHERS
About this Law B.-P. wrote thus:- “He is to do his duty before anything else, even though he gives up his own pleasure, or comfort, or safety to do it. When in difficulty to know which of two things to do, he must ask himself, ‘which is my duty?’ that is, ‘which is best for other people?’, - and do that one. He must Be Prepared at any time to save life, or to help injured persons. And he must try his best to do at least one good turn to somebody every day.”

Here again the example and attitude of the Patrol Leaders are of vital importance. If the Patrol Leaders are selfish and lazy, the Troop will be still more selfish and still more lazy. As this book continues on its way, I am presuming that I need not repeat myself too often. When a Scout Leader sees his Troop forgetting the third Scout Law his duty is to bring the matter to the attention of the Court of Honour immediately. Many is the time I have had to do this and in the last Chapter of this book I have accentuated even once more the vital obligations of the Scouter’s leadership.

4. A SCOUT IS A FRIEND TO ALL, AND A BROTHER TO EVERY OTHER SCOUT, NO MATTER TO WHAT COUNTRY, CLASS OR CREED THE OTHER MAY BELONG to which B.-P. added - “Thus if a Scout meets another Scout, even though a stranger to him, he must speak to him, and help him in any way that he can, either to carry out the duty he is then doing, or giving him food, or, as far as possible, anything that he may be in want of. A Scout must never be a snob. A snob is one who looks down upon another because he is poorer or who is poor and resents another because he is rich. A Scout accepts the other man as he finds him, and makes the best of him.

“Kim was called by the Indians ‘little friend of all the world’, and that is the name that every Scout should earn for himself.”
When B.-P. wrote this Law it propounded an ideal by no means common or accepted in this country of ours. Much has happened since then and the idea of brotherhood is now not seriously challenged. For all this we must give thanks. Usually a Senior Troop is small in numbers and all the Scouts know each other well. There should be little difficulty in achieving the right spirit within your Troop. Spread this idea a little wider and you will soon find snags to be overcome and ideas to suggest. As I said when commenting on the Interpreter Badge, this Law must live. A Scout must feel this brotherhood of ours almost from the moment he takes his Cub and Scout promise. For instance, a boy of 11, a new boy at his first Secondary School, feels very small indeed however much either courage or bravado may seek to hide it. If, on that first day at his new school, he is recognised and talked to by a Senior Scout - whether or not in the same Troop as he - the bleakest world is instantly changed. This is how the Senior can make the Law live for the younger boy. There must be nothing sloppy in this. If the Senior is also a prefect there must be no undue influence. Brotherhood and friendliness are, however, seldom worried by abstractions.

Going further afield, I don’t suppose I really need elaborate on the fun a Senior Troop experiences if it is internationally minded. Programmes, hikes, games are altered and vision wonderfully enhanced. All sorts of foreign boys are regularly entertained and international brotherhood is strengthened. If you want details just get in touch with the Secretary of the International Scout Club, Baden-Powell House, Queen’s Gate, London, S.W.7.

5. A SCOUT IS COURTEOUS
About this B.-P. wrote:—“that is, he is polite to all - but especially to women and children, and old people and invalids, cripples, etc. And he must not take any reward for being helpful or courteous.”

As you are not nurse to your Senior Scouts, you do not see them day by day in their ordinary life in the streets, on the bus and train, at work or at home. Now and again you get the odd glimpse, and I
repeat here what I have said time and again in this book - you must stamp on any second best and overlook nothing. It is, however, on the Easter hike or during the summer expedition that you really discover how gentlemanly your bunch really are. Here it is that you and the Patrol Leaders must set the example and day by day - even hour by hour - establish the right code of conduct in the Troop. I use the word “establish” because it appears all too evident that many parents - I sometimes think most parents - never seem to teach good manners to their children. Again and again and again I am amazed when I realise that they just don’t know how to behave. There is only one thing to do - the Scout Leader must teach ‘em.

Here are a few instances which readily come to my mind -
1. Raising the hat, touching their cap, or saluting when they meet an adult friend or acquaintance.
2. Not walking in groups all over the pavement.
3. Not being familiar with guards and ticket collectors - even calling them “Charlies”.
4. Knocking at doors before entering.
5. Standing up when an adult approaches.
6. Being decently dressed when going out with Mum or a girl friend.
7. Saying “Sir” to people older than themselves.
8. Waiting until other people have finished speaking before entering a conversation.
9. Not whispering or sniggering or indulging in other childish habits.
10. Taking great care not to give offence by a lapse of language or by innuendo.

I expect you could make this list a great deal longer. Don’t despair. Plunge into the fray and just don’t stand for it. We will not have Scouts behaving like hooligans.

6. A SCOUT IS A FRIEND TO ANIMALS
B.-P. added :- “He should save them as far as possible from pain, and should not kill any animal unnecessarily, for it is one
of God’s creatures. Killing an animal for food or an animal which is harmful is allowable.”

On your travels with your boys try to see that they have as many opportunities as possible to learn about all living things - animals, birds, fish and insects, etc. If there is a chance to ride horses, let them do so. If they can help the farmer in his various jobs encourage them. If they are keen to bird watch or observe the habits of night creatures give them every facility. My experience is that what a fellow knows about he tends to love and care for. A horseman will never hurt a horse. A bird watcher will never kill a bird, and a naturalist hates to see an animal or any living creature in pain. I suggest that this is the line of approach with Seniors.

“Chance to ride horses.”

7. A SCOUT OBEYS THE ORDERS OF HIS PARENTS, PATROL LEADER, OR SCOUTMASTER WITHOUT QUESTION
B.-P. writes – “Even if he gets an order he does not like, he must do as soldiers and sailors do, and as he would do for his Captain in a football team, he must carry it out all the same because it is his duty; and after he has done it he can come and state any reasons against it; but he must carry out the order at once. This is discipline.”

I wonder whether your experience is similar to mine. It is this Law which seems to upset so many boys. It appears that at home from quite an early age they are not made to obey. How I wish parents would realise the ill-service they do their boys. Sooner or later they must learn to obey, and it is not an easy lesson to learn at 15. Moreover from 14 until about 18 even the normally well-disciplined boys are unreliable and have to be handled firmly, albeit with understanding. The instinct to please oneself is very strong in adolescence and the Senior Scout Leader is continually
confronted with this problem. I notice Patrol Leaders particularly have a difficult job here. Many a time I have noticed a boy answer “No, why should I?” when told by his Patrol Leader to do something. When brought to task he often seems quite content to leave his reason just like that - “Why should he?” But invoking this 7th Scout Law seldom really gets to the root of the problem. It is all very well to train your Patrol Leaders to be careful with their orders (and there is much in this, because Patrol Leaders are adolescents too), but the fundamental is clear. Parents, Patrol Leaders and Scout Leaders must be obeyed without question. I sometimes think we are unique in insisting on this standard of discipline, and I would be the last to lower our flag even by an inch. The habit of instant obedience is infinitely important. It may save life. It makes difficult things much easier. It makes improbable things quite possible. It is a tidy, clean and orderly way of doing things and getting things done. You and I must stand no nonsense whatsoever, either with our own orders or with those of the Patrol Leaders. Most boys realise that to disobey one of us older Scouters is seldom worthwhile. Yet at a recent summer camp it happened three times to me. The instances were not very serious, but it was disobedience just the same. Three boys failed to return to camp on time on the last evening, and I could hear them singing miles away. A whole Patrol on a train journey made a shocking noise in their compartment. On board the boat I found a Patrol Leader and a Second smoking in public. I punished in each case - withdrawal of privileges. I did not trouble the Court of Honour to act, but acted alone. There was no bad feeling between us. The boys knew they were wrong and I forget quickly. Sometimes, of course, a boy may disobey seriously. To disobey an order in the hills or in a boat may result in a serious accident or even death. I discussed this point in “Mid Moor and Mountain” and I should not hesitate to send the boy home to his parents.

Throughout the years, however, the 7th Scout Law has proved effective time and time again. Patrols of boys have gone out on their own and the accepted loyalty to the boy leader has magnificently prevailed. During the age group covered by Senior
Scouts, matters are complicated by all sorts of adolescent disturbances - emotional and otherwise - and we must be very patient, but quite firm.

8. A SCOUT SMILES AND WHISTLES UNDER ALL DIFFICULTIES
B.-P. added this - “when he gets an order he should obey it cheerily and readily, not in a slow, hang-dog sort of way.”

“Scouts never grouse at hardships, nor whine at each other, nor grumble when put out, but go on whistling and smiling.

“When you just miss a train and someone treads on your favourite corn - not that a Scout ought to have such things as corns - or under any annoying circumstances, you should force yourself to smile at once, and then whistle a tune, and you will be all right.

“The punishment for swearing or using bad language is for each offence a mug of cold water to be poured down the offender’s sleeve by the other Scouts. It was a punishment invented by the old British Scout, Captain John Smith, 300 years ago.”

Senior Scouts can be sullen - usually for much the same reason that seems to drive them to disobedience. I find the other chaps usually provide the answer. So we Scout Leaders will be wise to keep out of the way. The principle here is:- always remove unnecessary authority from possible crime.

9. A SCOUT IS THRIFTY
B.-P. said this - “He saves every penny he can and puts it into the Bank, so that he may have money to keep himself when out of work, and does not make himself a burden to others; or that he may have money to give away to others when they need it.”

“Puts it into the Bank.”
In the Boy Scout Troop a Camp Bank is usually started early in the new year to encourage saving the necessary fees. In the Seniors I suggest we aim at the more adult practice of each Senior having a Post Office Savings Bank account. This saves someone a job anyway! Encourage saving by helping the boys to make many articles of their own kit, and I need not remind you that thrift does not refer only to money. Also, how many times do we have to show a young man how best to organise his time?

10. A SCOUT IS CLEAN IN THOUGHT, WORD, AND DEED
B.-P. wrote thus - “He looks down upon a silly youth who talks dirt, and he does not let himself give way to temptation either to talk it, or to think, or to do anything dirty. A Scout is pure and clean-minded and manly.”

The last twenty years has shown a tremendous widening of sex education. This, of course, is an advance, but it can be a mixed blessing. Some boys develop quickly and begin seriously to pick and choose their girl friends at 15. Other boys show little interest even at 18. The Scout Leader must be careful that when he seeks to cope with party activities desired by the former, he does not in any way prod the latter to launch out before they really want to.

With regard to ill-timed jokes and songs which have a double meaning and are not even funny, the Scout Leader must put his foot down instantly. Allow absolutely nothing suggestive and let it be seen that you are severe, not because you are innocent of these things, but because you reckon that the best fellows do not talk or think like that when they grow up.

The Scout Promise
The Scout Promise stands far above as well as embracing the Scout Law. It is a promise to do our best “to do our duty to God”. I am no theologian, but may I suggest that the relation between the Scout Law and the Promise is something like this:- We can never hope to keep the Scout Law without the power given to us by God. Put very simply, I think our main concern with Seniors and their
attempts to understand something of God is to try to convince them that God is power, with Him everything is possible, and that this power can be had for the asking. It is not my place here to write about helping your boys to understand the mysteries of Creation, or the wonders of the redemptive power of the Risen Christ, or the certainty of our resurrection. All these things I personally meditate on and, as one brought up a Presbyterian, believe with all my heart, but it is certainly my duty here to emphasise that every single Scouter of us has a clear responsibility to lead each boy to know and to love God. Our religious policy contained in \textit{P.O.R.} makes this perfectly clear, so let us now examine this matter by referring to this religious policy.

The religious policy of our Movement has been decided by the Committee of the Council advised by that very responsible and representative body called the Religious Panel. It is a masterpiece of co-operation and charity and it is so obviously wise in the very conciseness of its generalities. It is just possible that some of you may not be able to recall exactly what that policy is, so may I remind you of Rules 10, 11 and 12 and 180 (2) ? Here is a brief summary:-

\textit{Rule 10}

(I) It is expected that every Scout shall belong to some religious body and attend its services.

(II) If he does not so belong, the Scouter must try to arrange it.

(III) and Rule 180 (2). In a Church Sponsored Troop the Sponsoring Authority is responsible for the religious instruction of the Scouts and the Scoutmaster must back these efforts fully with special emphasis on Church attendance.

(IV and V). In Open Troops the boys are encouraged to attend their own Churches and strictly observe their rules.

Any camp services are to be simple and voluntary.

\textit{Rule 11}

No combined Church Parades.
Rule 12
Scouts’ Owns are supplementary to and no substitute for Church. Any summary of carefully constructed rules must of necessity leave out certain aspects of thought and precision which are not without importance but I think the above summary puts the matter in sufficient detail for our present purpose. I hope you do not mind, but I have used the word “Church” to embrace both Church and Chapel and I think in certain circumstances it might well include synagogue and mosque. I think we all worship the same Father.

I propose to take Rules 11 and 12 as completely understood and concentrate on Rules 10 and 180 (2). Will you please read these again? The essential stress is that every Scout should belong to a particular Church, enter into its life, understand its doctrine as far as possible, and attend its services. We Scouters are very careful to ensure that our Scouts obey the various conditions (say) for the Venturer Badge. This is not too difficult as most of us know quite a bit about hiking, camping, incidents and the like. If we do not, we read books about it and generally “gen” ourselves up in the matter. So we get along splendidly and our Scouts pass the Venturer Badge. But although Rule 10 is not so easy the principle is just the same. We learn and then we teach and then someone else examines. Some of us might say that there should be a capital “S” for that Someone! All of us know that if a Senior Scout programme makes no use of the Badge System and there is therefore no progress towards the Bushman’s Thong and the Queen’s Scout Badge, the boys will lose interest and they leave - lost to the Movement. Likewise if we fail in carrying out Rule 10 they may lose interest in the things of the spirit and that spark of the Divine which is in each of them may never - repeat never - be fanned into that warming flame which brings cheers wherever it goes. But what are we Scout Leaders expected to do and how are we supposed to do it? Let us try to find out. These are difficult questions to answer and it is not sufficient if I tackle one point here and another there almost at random. Our thinking must be planned. I don’t think it will be much use if we divide our problems into those connected with (a) Open and (b) Church Sponsored Troops because there are
so many variations in the control exercised and the help given by Sponsoring Authorities. We shall only get muddled and confused if we try that way. Instead I am going to tell you the stories of a few boys, each of whom needed manly help in his spiritual growth. These stories are not arranged in order of the subsections of Rule 10, but are in order of their increasing difficulty and complexity.

First of all there was Allan, whose parents went to the same Church as I did. Until he reached about 14 or 15 years of age, he always came to morning service and sat with his parents. Then came the spreading of his wings and his parents became worried. He was a busy young man with many interests - at school, in Scouting, and among his many friends. He was tending to leave his weekend homework until Sunday morning, and at Evening Service he preferred to sit with his friends rather than with his parents. Strong family tradition took a poor view of both variations and the Scouter thought it wise to intervene. With regard to his missing the Sunday morning Service, he pointed out that as Allan attended Bible Class on Sunday afternoon he did attend two Services every Sunday and with regard to the other point, did it really matter where he sat so long as he enjoyed worshipping his God. It has been proved so many times that too short a rein is quite antagonistic to spiritual growth and experience. In my opinion the Scout Leader fulfilled his function in this case because the parents accepted his advice, the boy continued to attend Church, and no rebellion took place. Later, the Scouter was able to recommend that Allan was ready to attend what we call a Young Communicants’ Class and it was a happy day for Allan, his parents and his Scouter when he was received into the full Membership of the Presbyterian Church of England by profession of faith. In this case the Scouter had little “crisis” work to do, but his interest, his continuing knowledge, and his example, sustained the boy when he needed it most. Surely an example of Rule 10 (i).

And now an example of Rule 10 (ii). Let me tell you about George, who was much the same age as Allan and was a member of the same Troop. His parents were decent, honest people, who were
tremendously proud of their boy and would do almost anything for him. I say “almost” because they jibbed at setting him the example of going to Church. George was a keen Scout and he gradually made his name among his fellows. They were a very mixed bunch but they did most things together and as they grew older they found themselves integrated into the life of the Church. For this the Minister and the Scout Leader were largely responsible. Just as they met together on Scout night, so they met together on Sunday night and sat together in Church. The Minister understood young people and although his sermons often approached the half-hour mark, there was no complaint from the young men and maidens. These sermons did their inspiring work and it is splendidly true that most of these boys - and girls - joined the Church when they were between 17 and 18. In the case of George and his friends the Minister played a vital part, but he would have never had these boys to preach to if it hadn’t been for the comradeship within that Troop, which the Scout Leader by his patience, enthusiasm and example sustained over many years. With George it began when he was a “Sixer” in the Pack. His Cubmaster was his Sunday School teacher and it was not long before Akela and his Sixers all sat together on Sunday morning. From this it was a natural step later on for George to sit with the Troop and the Scoutmaster in the evening. This is just another example of what a united and dedicated Group Council can do. This is how George joined the Church - and I am glad to say he is still a member these 30 years.

Let me now give you an example of Rule 10 (iv). David was a Jew and his mother and father were both delightful people. I first knew them in 1935 when Hitler’s violent anti-Semitism was startling the world. The father came to ask me whether David could join our Troop. It was a Troop sponsored by a Congregational Church and I confess that this was just the opportunity I was waiting for to demonstrate the universality of Scouting. There was no Open or Jewish Troop near, so we welcomed David gladly. I believe the Troop did much for him, but there is no doubt whatsoever that he did much for the Troop. He was diffident yet very quick to learn; he was extremely gentle (especially in First Aid), but a terrific
fighter in a scrap; and he venerated his parents. Such a boy was bound to make an impression and before long, out of courtesy and respect for him, our Troop prayers were founded on the Old Testament once a month, so that David could join in too. Technically, I expect I was naughty, but I have no regrets. It was grand to see how proud David was to be a Jew.

The two instances of Allan and George happened in a Non-Conformist Church, but exactly the same principles apply to Church of England and Roman Catholic Troops. The main technical difference is that Confirmation normally takes place very much earlier than the decision to “join the Church”, as we in Scotland say. I am now thinking of Brian, who, though a member of a Methodist Sponsored Troop, labelled himself “C. of E.” I say “labelled” advisedly for neither of his parents attended any Church nor did he. He went to a Church of England Grammar School and when the time came he was confirmed with the others. His Non-Conformist Scout Leader saw his chance, found out when the Service of Confirmation was to take place and watched with pleasure his friend confirming his baptism. Thereafter at camps the Scout Leader always tried to arrange things so that Brian could attend Early Communion. As he rather feared, enthusiasm waned, for, after all, there was no home encouragement. Then Brian became a Patrol Leader and part of the private “charge” which the Scout Leader gave him was the necessity of “communicating” regularly so as to be the best possible P/L he could. The result was good for a time. Then there were ups and downs. Eventually Brian became Troop Leader and his Scout Leader took the opportunity of suggesting to Brian that during the twelve months of his Patrol Leadership there had been definite relation between making time to pray regularly and attending Communion on the one hand, and the “ups” in the fortunes of his Patrol on the other. Brian admitted this and thus another vital truth was learned. The Scout Leader may have sheep of many folds, but he has a responsibility to each one - Jew or Gentile, bond or free! Again refer to Rule 10 (iv).
It is always much easier for us poor Scouters when all our Scouts are of one denomination, but, except in R.C. Troops, it seldom works out that way. Boys like to bring in their friends into their own Troop and the tests of boy friendship are neither theological nor denominational. So, in spite of theory, we Scouters find ourselves coping with a pretty mixed bunch. Incidentally, I think it sometimes rather nice when humanity and sentiment override orthodoxy and rational thinking. It is just as well sometimes that it does, for we might as well face the fact that the vast majority of our Cubs and Scouts seldom go to Church of their own accord. It is Rule 10 (ii) that is our problem. Most of these boys have never had the meaning of Church attendance explained to them either by father or by mother. They are literally sheep without a shepherd. They may well find the Church which sponsors their Troop congenial. On the other hand, they may not. Whichever it is the Scouter carries on. In my own Non-Conformist Troop we have an Assistant Scout Leader, who is a member of the Church of England. I find this exceedingly useful. As a boy proceeds through his teens his likes and dislikes grow as definite as they are variable. It is often best to encourage him - even in thoroughgoing criticism of your own Church. It may just not suit him. Sometimes when a boy is brought up in strict habits of Church attendance, that particular Church service may just not fit. If this is true of boys from Christian homes, how true it must be for the others. So I am not dismayed when I am told by one of my Seniors that our Non-Conformist service is drab and dreary. It may well be that our Church of England Assistant Scout Leader should then take over and get the young men attending his Church. The same thing may happen the other way round. Each of us Scout Leaders must be just as interested in the Church life of each of our Seniors as we are in his camping, and his badges - and, generally speaking, we are not. We all admit that this is bad, but we do little to mend our ways. We may give lip service to the idea and sometimes delude ourselves in thinking that we do as much as we are able. Many of us say “we are not much good at that sort of thing anyway”. How many boys have you and I failed in this way? The older we are the greater the number.
I expect you have met Peter because there are thousands like him. I don’t think he was worried about Rule 10 (iii), but I was. It was not my Troop but I did know Peter. Like the young gentleman I have just mentioned in the previous paragraph he had little good to say of his own Church and the Parson who served there. Here is one of our greatest problems. It is immaterial whether the Parson is the Vicar or the Minister, so I will just call him Padre. Rule 10 (iii) says that the Sponsoring Authority is responsible for the religious instruction of the boys and therefore in this case the Scouter, who was a conscientious fellow, sought out the Padre about Peter. Now the Padre could do one or more of many things and he certainly did his best. But it wasn’t any good. He failed and the position was probably worse than before. What was the Scouter to do then? I will tell you. He must go to the Padre and tell him straight out that even though he has tried his best it hasn’t worked. It is true that this is a joint problem, but under Rule 10 (iii) it is principally the Padre’s problem. Therefore, if it is a Minister and he just cannot get the measure of boys, he must get another Minister to have a go. If it is a Church of England priest, then he must get another priest to tackle the matter. Peter’s interests are paramount and no face saving or excuses are valid. If our Padre’s friends fail under Rule 10 Subsection (iii), then the Scouter must go back to Subsection (ii) and do his utmost to introduce Peter to a Padre who has a great chance of success. Please note that the Scouter cannot wash his hands just because it is not primarily his problem. The question must go on for Peter must find and love his God. But how, you ask? Let me try to point the way further.

Is not this our most pressing and desperate problem? Of course it is! Outstanding Padres are almost as scarce as outstanding Scouters. You know as well as I do how few Troops there would be if we insisted on having Scouters of outstanding ability. I fancy it would be the same in the Church. The pool of outstanding leadership is always limited whatever the human activity. But the wonderful thing about Scouting is that ordinary fellows like you and me can, if we obey the rules and try hard to do our best, run reasonably successful Troops. The game of Scouting works. It is
the same with Padres. God’s in His Heaven. Here is the solution. Both Padre and Scouter have the same end in view - in this case to help Peter. Of themselves they may be inadequate, but with God all things are possible, providing they both do their best. It is they that wait upon the Lord who will renew their strength. That is what the Prophet Isaiah said and he knew what he was talking about. The Padre and the Scouter must think together, if possible, pray together and then act together. They will then be a real team. I say to you that two such dedicated men *must* win through. What are they to do?

They must try to understand firstly each other and then all the boys like Peter - as well as many others. They must examine afresh and very humbly Church services, Sunday School, Bible classes, youth services, socials and youth clubs. They must try to see all these things through Peter’s eyes; yet never forget that they are the spiritual descendants of another Peter. They must not be content with trifling experiments, but do their best to get down to the root of the problem. I don’t think they will attract young men like Peter with expedients such as asking him to read the Lesson or take up the collection. These are privileges and should be accorded to those who have faithfully sought to earn them. Peter will rightly despise what he deems to be almost a bribe. Nor will purposeless socials after evening service attract him for long. Such things are on the wrong wavelength and I suggest quite a different approach.

The intelligent boy is open to argument and if the Scouter is not adequately equipped it is almost certain that the Padre will be. Thus the Padre’s knowledge and the Scout Leader’s presence and interest may well succeed. Discussions may help, a certain type of girl may help. Don’t get bogged down with relative non-essentials like the Virgin Birth and difficult abstractions (Peter thinks them so) like the Trinity. Try to fathom why there is so much suffering in this world and establish beyond a shadow of a doubt that it is *not* God’s will. Show that religion has no real need to run away from science. You may even find them interested in debating the Christian Church’s unhappy divisions. If you do, all right; but
bring them back to human beings and God’s care for them as soon as you possibly can. Christ was so often concerned with men and women and boys and girls. His followers should be so too. This is one approach.

But much of this line of attack may be miles above the heads of many Seniors. Their ignorance and their contentedness therewith is another major problem. Many a Senior of 16 has the religious understanding of a child of six without the latter’s faith. It is useless to offer him philosophic argument but you can seek to show him Christ. When Christ was here He drew all men unto Him. Try to imagine what Christ would do and say today if you could see and hear Him. Share these thoughts with your Scouts and see whether they think you are right. Next get it absolutely clear that Jesus does live today though we cannot see Him. Do you yourself really believe this? Say “Jesus lives” out loud until you do believe it. Then act accordingly. Some Padres are inevitably suspect but you may not be. Your Scouts may believe you and follow your example. Here is the Scout Leader’s greatest opportunity and responsibility. At least we have got to the root of the matter. It is your example that counts. Your belief may be simple - it may well be that for this purpose it is better so. But it must be sincere, it must be humble, it must be friendly and, above all, it must be shared. It must be shared with your friends - your Scouts.

But you may consider yourself unworthy of this responsibility. Too true! Of course you are - and so is each one of us. You may consider that you know far too little about religion and you are not cut out to talk about it. Once again, this is probably true of most of us. Granted that we cannot hope to become theologians but surely we can take the trouble to read something about it if by doing so we can help just one boy. You may ask where you are to start. You may ask - “Must I start by reading the Bible?” Quite frankly, I don’t think you should. I would start with a biography of Jesus Christ suited to your present understanding and faith. This will inevitably result in your reading the Bible and you will be doing so
with much more purpose. There are a very great number of biographies of Our Lord. I will mention just two - and they are poles apart in both approach and in doctrine. If you would like to begin with the story told with reverent imagination I would recommend the trilogy by John Oxenham - “The Hidden Years”, “Anno Domini”, and “The Splendour of the Dawn”. I find them helpful still. The other biography I would recommend is Bishop Gore’s “Jesus of Nazareth”. It is not my function to mention more. There is another much more recent book I suggest you also read, “The Christian Faith” by David Read. It is among the Teach Yourself books and costs 6/-.

Now a word about reading the Bible. There was a Penguin published in 1952 called “The Four Gospels” and I find it very acceptable to adolescents. The gospels are divided into chapters but not into verses. There is a similar Penguin recently out called “The Acts of the Apostles” and costs 3/6. It would be quite wrong for a layman like myself to proceed further in recommending books because each of you can easily consult your own Padre. Moreover even the few suggestions I have just made may be open to sincere criticism by the experts. All the same, this chapter is like a talk between Scouters and I can only say what I know, which is admittedly only too little.

One other thought occurs to me. During the last eight years I have been the Scout Leader of a Senior Troop at a Church which I don’t attend and which is situated some miles from my home. I cannot stress too strongly how great a handicap this has been. I do not worship with my Scouts. I never see them on Sundays. We never walk and talk after Sunday evening service, discussing all manner of things. I only know at second-hand who goes to Church regularly, who is slipping, and who never goes at all. I have two jolly good Assistant Scouters now and when they take over from me completely the position will be greatly strengthened because the boys and that Church will be very much better served. I would have no hesitation in handing over even a large Senior Troop to a keen young man of reasonable Scouting efficiency who is enthusiastic over the affairs of his Church, attends its services, and enters into its life always provided that the Minister is standing fair
and square behind him. Together they will go forward in the service of their Lord.

I have one final word to say. In your talk and your practice of religion you must be absolutely sincere. Boys see through insincerity quicker than adults do. So don’t say prayers - pray. Do not allow them to gabble the Lord’s Prayer - and you will know as well as I do that they sometimes almost shout it. Get them to pray it quietly, almost inaudibly - reverently. Don’t restrict Christ to Sundays, but let Him permeate all the Troop’s activities. I have sought to show you at the beginning of this chapter how to integrate the Scout Law into each Troop night. Do the same with religion, but more reverently. Let me close with actual example. Encourage your Duty Patrol Leader - whose privilege it is to lead Troop prayers at the end of the evening - to prepare for this before he leaves home. If he uses a prayer book see that he does so with intelligence. Encourage him to rehearse privately beforehand so that the prayers really become his own and so that there is no stumbling over diction. If your Troop tradition tends towards less formal prayers, explain to your Patrol Leaders that such prayers need even more careful preparation and rehearsal. They will readily realise that to “ramble” in prayer is something akin to insult both to God and to the rest of the Troop. If care is taken in these matters, you will find that your Troop will really be lifted up night after night. I have been amazed time and time again by successive Patrol Leaders. Then follows the Scout Leader’s reading of the Blessing or his giving his Benediction, whichever is appropriate to your Troop. This last is an epitome, a summary, a condensation of this wonderful opportunity and responsibility. So may I reverently do likewise and end with this prayer? “May the Grace of our Lord Jesus Christ and the love of God and the joy of his Holy Spirit be with you and all whom you love and lead now and for evermore.”
AS I wander round the County of Hertfordshire I am asked lots of question about running a Senior Scout Troop and I hope this little book will already have answered quite a few of them. There are, however, quite a number of problems which do not come quite within the bounds of any of the chapters I have written. Some of them really deserve a chapter to themselves, but I have to draw the line somewhere. So here are brief notes on a variety of subjects which I know are causing concern to Scout Leaders all over the country:-

1. Smoking
The law of the land, of course, is that no boy should smoke until he is 16. Thus far it is relatively easy, for you can at least be justified in giving a direct and unqualified “No”. But, when the boy is 16 years old, you cannot do this and anyway I don’t think you should. I always believe it is a mistake to prohibit, if only because it encourages what you want to stop. It is not only adolescents who react thus. My experience tells me to seek moderation by appealing to reason rather than ordering “No” and backing it with an appeal to loyalty, probably pretty well strained as it is.

A few cigarettes a week or an occasional pipe may do a boy of 16 or 17 very little harm. I do not think it will do him good. What I am hot on is that when we Scout Leaders give the order that there is to be no smoking - for instance, when boys appear in public in uniform or when camping abroad in a country whose Scouts are not allowed to smoke - then it is to be obeyed absolutely. If a boy disobeys he must be punished and it should be emphasised that he is being punished not for smoking - which is not one of the deadly
sins, but for doing so when told not to, which is. The Scout Leader’s orders must be perfectly clear and thoroughly understood.

Having said all this, and in view of recent medical research and recommendations concerning this subject, I cannot help feeling that we would be doing an even greater service to our Senior Scouts by discouraging the habit of smoking altogether. Who knows that by so doing we may be influencing them in a way that will benefit them for the rest of their lives - lives that may be longer lived because of our guidance and advice?

2. Proficiency Badges
In this book we have mentioned only those Proficiency Badges which lead either to the Bushman’s Thong or the Queen’s Scout Badge. There are many more and they have a very definite and valuable place in our training. For instance, the Master Swimmer is complementary to the Rescuer Badge. The various “hobby or interest” badges enable a boy to show the extent of his specialization. By his very make-up hardly any Senior is a “badge hog” and the attainment of any of the less known Proficiency Badges should be enthusiastically welcomed by the Scout Leader. A copy of P.O.R. should be available to all, and, if you have your own Headquarters, the requirements of all the Badges should be posted on a sheet of cardboard and hung or nailed to the wall.

3. Recruiting from outside the Movement
I wish I saw more of this. When Senior Scouting started, we were all sure that, just because we had such a good programme to offer the young man of 15-17, we were bound to attract crowds of boys who previously had not been interested in Scouting. This has not happened to anything like the extent some of us hoped for, and we must all share in the blame. I think there are three principal reasons - (a) our programmes are often not sufficiently attractive, (b) when they are, we do not make their attractions sufficiently well known, and (c) boys in our Troops and we Scout Leaders are not sufficiently friendly to attract and keep the boys who join us when already in adolescence.
I think this should be a challenge to every Senior Scout Troop. If each Troop gained two such recruits each year, it would be a tremendous fillip to Senior Scouting - not only in our census figures, but in providing new blood. There are all sorts of ways of attempting to do this, and the method I have found best is to choose a prospective recruit with care and invite him as a visitor to the Summer Expedition. My experience is that three times out of four you will get your man. Good luck to you!

4. District and County Organisation
The first essential is simplicity. At District level I think the informal meeting best. We S.S.L.s are usually a hard pressed minority, seldom numbering more than six or seven in any District. Thus we can easily meet in each others homes and at least enjoy comfortable seats. Let there be minutes for decisions taken and do not let this part of the meeting last more than one hour. Then have a brew of something and swap lies. I do not think we should divorce Senior Scouting too much from Boy Scouting and I recommend a formal meeting of all Scouters from both Sections in the District every three months. The more intimate Senior meeting can be held twice during the intervening two months.

“At least enjoy comfortable seats.”

At County level I recommend separate Senior Scout and Boy Scout Sub-Committees of the County Scout Council under the Chairmanship of the appropriate A.C.C. I consider quarterly meetings are ample and I recommend one hour’s formal business and the rest of the time taken up with tackling problems. I would like to impress upon you that, if any meeting has lasted more than one hour, the Chairman should start to finish it. My experience is that little real or effective business is done after the first hour. This is particularly true of evening meetings when everybody is pretty well tired before they start.
5. District and County Events

I consider there should be only one District Senior Scout event in the year which is considered to be so important that 100 per cent. attendance is expected. If the main County event is outdoors, it may be wise to make the District one indoors. It is also wise to organize the District event about six months distant from the County one.

There may well, of course, be several District events besides the main one, but the Troops should not feel that they have a duty to attend. These may include various Badge courses, Badge tests, sporting events, inter-Troop or inter-Patrol competitions on a variety of subjects, camps and hikes, educational visits, meetings to hear very special speakers, and parties. The A.D.C.(S.) is responsible, but if he is a wise man he will farm out much of this to Scout Leaders and responsible Senior Scouts. All this is, of course, in addition to public District events, like St. George’s Day Parades, etc.

When a District is composed of several small units, it is sometimes a very good idea for these to act together on a District basis in order to stage certain activities which otherwise would be impossible or at least very difficult. These events can take place every month and a definite date like “the last Saturday evening of each month” is a good idea.

Here are nine suggestions:-

October: A special speaker who expects a decent audience, or whom it is right so to honour.
November: Wide game, for which prior planning in tactics is required.
December: Some party or other - probably a good turn.
January: Full dress discussion or debate.
February: The A.D.C.’s evening when all can ask questions, criticise, etc.
March: Another good turn.
April: Special sing-song.
May: Another wide game.
June: Athletic meeting.

I recommend all County events to be run on the same principle - one main event and such other events as will attract individual Troops, inasmuch as they fit in with their programmes and type of training. With regard to the main event, which in Hertfordshire we call the “Gathering”, we try to make it so exciting that no boy willingly stops away. Our experience of such shows –

1. Arrange the programme months ahead and circulate the high spots.

2. Ask the County Rovers to organise the “services”.

3. Start on the Friday evening and end on the Sunday afternoon, even though many can only come for part of the time.

4. Charge a booking fee and do not skimp amenities.

5. Have a shelter like a marquee so that the “talk” part continues, whatever the weather.

6. A wide game and a camp fire are always in the programme.

7. Do not have “Scouts’ Own” on the Sunday morning, but let all go to a real church.

8. Get a good mixer as your principal guest and let him loose all round the camp.

9. Hold a Conference after church when the main item is an open session.

10. Expect a high standard of efficiency in all things.
11. Aim at 50 per cent, attendance of the whole Senior Scout population in the County and welcome every Scouter who will come. Give them plenty to do.

12. Make absolutely certain that there is a real climax on the Sunday afternoon. This is very difficult, but quite essential.

6. Relations with the Pack and Boy Scout Troop

The key to good relations between the Senior Troop and the rest of the Group is regular meetings of the Group Council. Now and again, there ought to be joint features, such as a film show on some mutually interesting topic. Seniors can be very useful in instructing Patrol Leaders in First Class Badge work, as well as helping the Boy Scout Scoutmaster in testing for the Tenderfoot and Second Glass Badges. Some Seniors are especially good in handling Cubs, and, when a Senior volunteers to do so he should be encouraged - especially when he has just come up from the Boy Scout Troop and is perhaps feeling the loss of his old position as Patrol Leader.

It must be remembered, however, that at this stage the boy’s training as a Senior Scout must come first. There is plenty of time later on for him to serve the Troop and the Pack. Thus he must put his main energies into the normal activities of the Senior Troop and its wide variety of training. I don’t think Scout Leaders will experience any serious clash in this connection. Now and again I find a boy’s progress in Senior Scouting suffering slightly, but it is usually easy to guide his enthusiasm in the way it should go.

The great thing is for all four sections of the Group to be a happy family, and, if the Group Scoutmaster and the leaders of the other Sections have mutual respect for each other, all will be well. As I said at the beginning of this section, you must have a Group Council functioning often and happily.

This, however, is not the whole matter. There is no need for Senior Scouts to restrict their help to their own Pack or Boy Scout Troop. Some Packs and Troops have no Seniors and they are usually in
most need of help. Pray do not allow any narrow Group loyalty to
dim the fact that we are all one Movement. No artificial barriers of
Group, District, or County must ever come between us and service.
Many Senior Scouts of a suburban Troop work in town and some
of them could very well spare one night a week helping in an area
where Scouting is desperately short of leaders. Such service might
well develop into Scoutmastership in its most vital setting.

7. Handicapped Scouts

What opportunities for service await developing in this wonderful
facet of Scouting! So few of us know anything about what needs
doing. Do you know of any blind or deaf boys living near you? Is
there a hospital near you with a children’s ward? Are there
opportunities by which your Senior Scouts can cheer the life of
even just one boy? You will find that the answer is “Yes” if you
really persevere in putting your question. In your County you may
have an A.C.C. for Handicapped Scouts. If so, go and see him
yourself and, if it is clear that your boys can lend a hand, get him
down to the Troop meeting. He can then state his case better than
you, and my experience is that boys seldom fail to respond to such
a challenge. Just think what could be done if every responsible and
reliable Senior Scout Troop undertook service such as this. It must,
however, be well done, it must be done regularly, and your boys
must be prepared for certain disappointments inevitable when
hospital routine is involved. These problems are just part of the
challenge, and I cheerfully predict that your chaps will never be
happier than when serving boys living under difficulty and under
the weariness of limited activity.

8. The Sea and the Air

As I made clear in the introduction to this handbook, I have no
qualifications to deal with Senior Sea Scouts or Senior Air Scouts.
I would like, however, to make a plea that those of us who are
neither Sea Scouts nor Air Scouts would be well advised to take
every training advantage offered by the sea and the air. The famous
phrase “Messing about in boats” relates to an activity wholly in
line with Senior Scout training. Thus those Scouters who are
fortunate enough to run Troops either near the sea, or a canal, or a river should explore every chance of making use of them. Doubtless many of you will have faced enquiries from your boys about the possibility of the Norfolk Broads for a summer jaunt. Why not? But you will need to book your boat well in advance, you must have an experienced skipper, and you must use “sail” if you are to get the fullest benefit from a training point of view.

Many boys in ordinary Senior Scout Troops are tremendously interested in all things connected with the air. What a good sign this is! So encourage it. Just because there is no Air Scout Troop near you, there is no reason why an air-minded boy should be compelled to leave the Scouts and join the A.T.C. Do something worthwhile about it yourself. Examine the conditions laid down for the various “air” Badges and find out what can be laid on. You will find that interest is far wider than you probably imagined. This is indeed an important need of which we should be more aware. Have you ever thought of gliding as a Senior Scout activity? Some Groups have found that by turning the Senior Scout Section into Senior Sea Scouts or Air Scouts they are able to get new enthusiasm and a wider outlook with possibilities that are not open to the under-15 age group.

"Have you ever thought of gliding."

9. The Boys’ Brigade, the Cadet Forces and the Youth Clubs
We are all different, but we are all pulling the same way. I have a tremendous admiration for the Boys’ Brigade. They have been at it longer than we have and their technique has wonderful results. How I wish our formal discipline approached theirs! What strength they must gain by their insistence on regular attendance at the Sunday morning Bible class. Recently we had the privilege of having a B.B. Captain as a special speaker on a Friday and everybody thought it was a very worthwhile evening - even, I believe, the B.B. Captain. There is room for considerable co-opera-
tion between Company and Troop - games evenings, first-aid competitions, gym competitions, sing-songs, and even hikes.

The Cadet Forces have not had an easy time since 1945, and it says much for the enthusiasm of their officers that so much progress has been made. It has been my privilege to know the Secretary of the Combined Cadet Force for some years and I can assure you we can go a long way together. It may be news to some of you to learn that they use “Mid Moor and Mountain” extensively - and also sell it. Cooperation on a local basis is the best bet, and I commend it to you. What is more, you may well find the Instructor you have been looking for. Their officers are very, very like ours and I reckon we should know each other better.

It is more than likely that many of your Seniors also belong to a Youth Club. And why not? Particularly the mixed ones. As I mentioned earlier, I encourage this sort of thing and I just hope the boys take the Scout Law into the Clubs with them. Of course, it all depends on the Leader of the Club and that is one of the matters about which a conscientious Scout Leader and Commissioner will concern himself. Many Youth Clubs are adapting and/or adopting our Senior Scout methods, and we wish them well.

Thus, my brother Scouters, please remember we and these other Organisations are not rivals and it is not our policy to pinch each other’s boys. If a Senior Scout in our Troop wants to leave and join something else I am sorry, but I do all I can to see him happily settled, give him a certificate to show what he has done in Scouting and make enquiry now and again as to how he is getting on. Similarly, I suggest that if a boy from another Organisation seeks membership of your Troop, it is only common courtesy to have a word with his previous Leader. He may well be able to help you.
All of us are out to help boys, and no partisan rivalry must mar our service.

10. **Headmasters**

I admit some are problems, but most are extremely co-operative. A very great deal depends upon the attitude of us Scouters and Commissioners. We must remember that these men are enthusiasts too. Moreover, they are concerned with boys all day and every day, while we are just amateurs in the business. Let us please remember that all these men know much more about boys than we do. There is no use our saying we see a boy in his spare time doing the things he really” wants to do. It does not alter the fact that their knowledge must be greater than ours. I really do believe they know more about the boys in our Troops then we do. Thus, when you get really foxed with some especially contrary adolescent, I strongly recommend you to seek out the boy’s Headmaster, or House master, or Form Master and find out what he thinks. My experience is that we are seldom repulsed.

"Some are problems."

Scouting may give a boy something which he may never learn at school, however good that school may be. But, for all that, his schooling is always more important than his Scout training. We all know this to be a fact and we should say so more often. We Scouters should do our level best to avoid clashes of loyalty and clashes of dates. This is not difficult if we organize ourselves well ahead. I always reckon it is an honour for the Troop when one of its members gets into the First XV or the First XI. I think it is an even happier occasion when he is made a prefect. Once in a while, your Troop may contain the Captain of the School. Therefore, if you are asked to go to the School play, go. If one of your Scouts is playing at home, try to find time to watch at least part of the match. Do your best to visit “hobbies” evenings and the like.
In ways such as these co-operation is well founded and you then have the justification for inviting one or more of the School staff to some important Scout occasion. Once again, we are co-operating in order to serve our boys, and that should be the justification for all we do.

One word of warning - in all your dealings with school authorities never give your chaps away. Certain things that happen in a Troop should be kept to ourselves, and you can rest assured that the Schoolmaster will be quite as loyal on his side. For either of us to act otherwise would not be fair. It sometimes happens, however, that a Headmaster or Housemaster, or School Captain can be of tremendous use to the Scouter, and I see no reason whatever why we should not seek all the help we can get. Verily we often need it.

11. Scouting in Schools
School Scouting has its own particular problems but I have not the slightest intention of debating these here. What I wish to emphasise is that no two school Troops have the same problems and that very often they are quite different from those normally experienced by us Scoutmasters who run ordinary Troops. In some schools Scouting takes its place alongside other school societies or activities, the Troop meeting being in school time with a schoolmaster Scouter. Elsewhere the Scoutmaster may not be a member of the school staff and the Troop meetings are held in the evenings. Some Troops are sponsored by secondary modern schools, some by technical schools, some by grammar schools, and some by public schools. Obviously all these will have differing traditions and their respective activities will differ accordingly.

There is no space to give detailed guidance, but I would commend the following principles to Scoutmasters running School Troops:-

1. Never run counter to the Corps.
2. In many school Troops quite a number of our character training activities are adequately covered by other societies and pursuits. Any overlapping by us is therefore quite unnecessary.

3. Let Scouting concentrate on offering a type of worthwhile activity not available otherwise within the school. Easter hikes and Summer Expeditions are examples.

They must be run on Scout lines whereby all the arrangements are left in the hands of the Scouts themselves, and cost is reduced to an absolute minimum. In this way we show that we have no desire whatsoever to compete with the many and much more elaborate journeys often sponsored by schools.

4. Whatever it is that a School Troop does, it must be done superbly well so that there is no suggestion of Scouting being a kid’s game. To this end, very careful planning and adequate publicity must be arranged - especially on notice boards and in the school magazine.

I hope these few ideas will be of value. Scouters of School Troops have many problems, but they should also remember they have many advantages.

12. Troop Leaders
Some Scouters who could have them, will not have them at any price. I don’t share this view. For years now I have been splendidly served by a series of enthusiastic young men. It is not an easy post to fill. They have to interpret the Troop to the Scouter and the Scouter to the Troop. He has, of course, to be a Queen’s Scout and generally he will have had considerable experience as a Patrol Leader. He is thus able to get alongside a Patrol Leader in a way none of us older men can possibly do. He is much closer to the boys and can put their point of view to us much better than they can themselves. At the same time he is half way to becoming a Scouter and as such he can take the correct stand right in the middle of the Troop when any crisis arises.
Most of us older Scouters should really have a young A.S.S.L. to help us. So many Troops, however, have no Scouter at all and I am, therefore, quite reluctant to ask a young man to help me when he could otherwise be running a show on his own. So I am content with a Troop Leader, and I must say I have been well served.

13. When a boy says he is going to leave
Most boys decide to leave us at least once a year. Usually, of course, they have second thoughts. Much depends on the common sense of the Scouter. There is always a reason and you must find out what it is - homework, night school, girls, a particular girl, a youth club, dancing classes on a Friday night, television, Mum or Dad, his Patrol Leader, you, Troop programmes, lack of personal progress, too much being expected of him, too little being expected of him, grown out of his present Scout uniform and a new outfit would clash with buying his new suit, just fed up, or just doesn’t know.

We have to understand what is going on inside him. The Troop Leader may be able to tell you or the boy’s Patrol Leader. These young men are often quite right in their facts, but they are not always sufficiently mature to draw the correct conclusions. Thus, you must know each boy so well that you can almost anticipate his actions. This will give you lots of trouble and take lots of time, but it is your function. While we must understand and be understanding, we must also be firm so that no lowering of standard is permitted. Usually it is the opposite that is required - a challenge!

If you do lose a boy, please part friends. Never adopt the attitude that he is being disloyal or letting you down, as this may stop the occasional greeting when you meet him in the street. You may not continue as brother Scouts, but you can at least remain friends. Always remember that he may well come back.
14. Training in hardness

Right throughout this book you may detect a recurring idea which might be described as a thread of continuing challenge towards a higher standard. We must, of course, never set too high a standard or we will never get the boys who need Scouting most into our Troops. At the same time we shall fail all our boys if we allow them to take the easy way, if we never pull them up, if we never challenge them. To take such a line will make Scouting such a poor anaemic thing that it will never attract the boys who are really out for fun and adventure and it will never hold those for whom we make these concessions. Thus I consider Senior Scouting must always be a challenging adventure and, over many years of experiment, I have discovered that most boys prefer it that way.

This is especially so on the Summer Expedition. Some will tell you that, as the two weeks summer camp is all the holiday they are going to get, it must be a holiday. There must be plenty of leisure, lying in the sun, visiting the crowded seaside resort where there are piers, cafes and cinemas. This may sound reasonable enough, but it is a complete fallacy. Such a camp will be an utter flop!

During the War, when I met an old Scout by accident, what did he want to talk about? It was the hikes we used to have in Scotland, in Wales, and in Switzerland. It was the same in their letters. However hard the hike may have been at the time, in retrospect it was wonderful. They learned this lesson; to appreciate fully the comfort of rest, one must have toiled almost to the point of exhaustion; that to appreciate fully the pleasure of a good square meal, you must be really hungry; and that to appreciate fully the good fortune of good weather and glorious sunshine, it is necessary to have experienced days and nights of storm and rain in exposed places.
All these things - both pleasant and hard - you will meet if you travel adventurously, and I commend the idea to you. Long ago Livy wrote - “Toil and pleasure, in their natures opposite, are yet linked together in a kind of necessary connection.”

15. Senior Scouting Age Limits
Some time ago considerable discussion took place about age limits and several amendments were inserted in P.O.R. as a result. However, as I travel around I am conscious that considerable confusion exists, so I think it might be helpful to elucidate this matter. First then, here are three of the amendments:-

1. Rule 247 N(iv) - This rule permits the D.C. to allow a Senior Scout to remain in the Senior Troop after his 18th birthday. The amendment limits this extension until his 19th birthday.

2. Rule 247 N(iii) - This is a new rule to enable, where desirable, a Senior Scout to be a P/L. in the Boy Scout Troop until his 16th birthday. This will give him time to train a new P/L., and at the same time enable the existing P/L. to be both a member of a Senior Troop and a PJL. in the Boy Scout Troop.

3. Revised Rover Organization - A Rover Squire must be at least 17 years of age on admission.

With regard to No. 1, this is not for general application, and it refers only to very exceptional cases. This amendment will only very, very occasionally concern us. Nos. 2 and 3 are, however, a very different kettle of fish, and could cause great disorder to our section if they are interpreted foolishly. What could happen is just this - it could be argued that it was intended that boys should remain in the Boy Scout Troop until they are 16, and, as they can become Rover Scouts at 17, what’s the use of bothering with Senior Scouting at all. I think this is both stupid and illogical, but it has already been put to me. I can assure you that any such interpretation runs counter to H.Q. policy and intention.
My experience tells me that the full Senior Scout training takes about 2½ years to put across, and thus, if advancement to the Senior Troop is delayed until 16, the boy will be over 18 before his training is complete. Moreover, most of us know full well that it is between 14 and 16 when our greatest leakage occurs. So I hope boys will advance from the Boy Scout Troop to the Senior Scout Troop at about 15. We wish to play ball with the Rovers, and to give them all the Seniors they can take at about 17½, but the Movement cannot have it both ways. As I have already tried to emphasize, all this can be properly and happily settled at regular meetings of the Group Council, the criterion being - what is best for this boy, that boy, and even that one.

16. Our Relation to Rovers
When a boy finishes his Senior Scout training between the ages of 17 and 18, he has three choices before him:- leave the Movement, join the Rover Crew, or become a Scouter in the Troop or Pack. If he decides on the first and nothing can shake him, pray let us realize that he is now a man and quite capable of making up his own mind. While we regret his decision, we must respect it. I suggest we give him the equivalent of an honourable discharge, wish him well and later make a note to get him back into the Crew or at least into the B.-P. Guild. He may have been with us for years and we must organize the parting pleasantly and with dignity.

Let us hope, however, that the young man decides on either two or three, or both. Both, of course, is preferable if he has the time. Suppose, however, he is one of those who is not likely to become a Scouter. I hope he will find in the Rover Crew a happy and virile crowd of young men with whom he can complete his Scout training. It depends, of course, on his make-up. But if he has already earned his Queen’s Scout Badge, then I think he should be ready to Join the Crew about 17½. If, however, he is nearing the completion of his Queen’s Scout training, then I think he should wait in the Senior Scout Troop until he is successful, even though he is close on 18 before he reaches his target. On the other hand, if a fellow of 17 is not making much headway with his Queen’s
Scout and does not seem to be in line for promotion to a Patrol Leader, I think it well worthwhile considering whether he might not make better progress in the Crew. In this case it depends very largely on the merits of both Crew and Troop. Remember that an unsuccessful Crew is sometimes due to a poor Senior Scout Troop that does not feed it with keen and efficient recruits.

A young man who qualifies as a Queen’s Scout before he is 17 and who starts about then to serve the Senior Troop as a Patrol Leader should obviously stay on in the Troop for some time. He will get the best possible training as a Senior Patrol Leader. If he is keen to be a Scouter either in the Troop or the Pack the transition is easy and he goes from one type of leadership to another. If he has plenty of time he will obviously be a great asset to the Crew and I would like to see him join it. I therefore hope every Senior will become either a Rover or a Scouter, or both. He is, however, likely to become neither unless there is a virile Senior Scout Section to hold him and to train him during his 16th and 17th years. In the Senior Troop he must find exciting Summer Expeditions, the fun of the corporate good turn and all the training necessary for him to qualify as a Queen’s Scout. So let us be proud of our function and press on with enthusiasm so that more and more of our boys return to the Movement as Scouters and/or train further and serve faithfully in the Rover Crew. Above all, remember that Senior Scouting is doing well, we are on a good wicket, and we are going to stay there!
I WISH to finish this little book by asking you to examine once again some of the first principles of our Movement. I am not in the least apprehensive about the future of Scouting, but I am quite convinced that, unless we Scout-masters show greater initiative in our Leadership, our Movement may be in danger of losing much of its spiritual strength and might well wither into a soulless organization for better-to-do boys within ten or twenty years. I assure you the danger is a very real one - even though we appear to be on the up and up. I believe the Cub Section is doing well. Not only are numbers up - there seem to be millions of new Cubs everywhere - and the obvious happiness of these small boys and the enthusiasm of their Cub masters are just splendid. But Scouting over the age of 11 is in danger of becoming a thin, selfish thing. Two qualities are tending to be lacking and, without them, Scouting is not worthwhile. These qualities are (1) the good turn habit, and (2) the love of camping.

The Good Turn Habit
How many Patrol Leaders make a special point of training new recruits in doing good turns? This training is absolutely essential, as the young boy of 11 or 12-even though he has been a Cub-finds it hard to discover good turns to do to the community. He has to be helped, and the fellow to help him is his Patrol Leader. I am afraid Patrol Leaders do not realize this and they are not encouraged or reminded to do so by their Scoutmasters. Here is a vital part of our leadership. In the early days of the Movement there was such an upsurge of enthusiasm for doing good turns that they were the essential feature of Scouting. They were the subject of countless music hail jokes - a great compliment really. But times have changed. English life has changed, home life has changed, education has changed, the value of money has changed, ethical standards have changed. Sometimes these changes have been for the better, sometimes for the worse. Let me give you a few examples which may show where the trouble lies. It is exceedingly
difficult to put this sort of thing clearly on paper, but I will do my best.

1. Each generation of Scouts needs to examine afresh the good turn possibilities of the district in which they live. Needs change. It is splendidly true that there is much less poverty than there was even thirty years ago. Children’s Christmas parties, which were great occasions in the early days of Scouting, are no longer so necessary in many places. In fact, in many localities, children have too much given them. Times have changed and now it is the older people who need our thought and care. Most old people are very diffident in accepting help and are very independent. We must be very careful to avoid any suggestion of charity. Yet so many of them need lots of little services done for them which they just cannot be bothered doing for themselves at their age. Scouters with ageing parents will know exactly what I mean.

The little services I have in mind are:-

(a) shopping in wet and cold weather;
(b) getting in the coal and coke;
(c) chopping firewood;
(d) thawing out freezing pipes.
All these apply to every old person living alone, regardless of their income. For those who find things hard you can add

(e) cleaning windows regularly;
(f) tidying gardens and seeing that there are always some flowers indoors;
(g) all sorts of housework to help those who have rheumatism and like troubles.

Do you see what I mean? All this has to be searched for, because the most deserving folk are always too diffident to ask for help. They don’t want to be a nuisance. Therefore ask the local clergy and the ministers, the District Nurse, the W.V.S. people and Toc H. They ought to know.
But above all, let every Scout keep his eyes open and *seek* opportunities. Once in a while they may be told to mind their own business, but in nine cases out of ten they will be so greatly welcome. There are plenty of jobs which Senior Scouts can do, but it needs the leadership of the Scout Leader to point the way.

2. I am often told that many Seniors find it hard enough to make time for the weekly meeting in the evening - so great is the pressure of homework and night school. Thus any other evening activity is right out of the question. It looks, therefore, that the Scouts are not going to get their good turn done. They are not going to have the time. I repeat this - they are not going to have time for good turns. You may say that this is an exaggeration, but I suggest that you ask yourselves squarely and answer yourselves honestly - just how many people do these young men help every week? I know very well that they are very busy, but does this mean that their activities are so varied that they have no time to think of others? Is there not a danger that this is plain selfishness and don’t you think that they had better face it. I doubt whether even homework should *always* take precedence over good turns, although I simply cannot believe that the clash really lies between these two. Not even the slowest boy is always doing homework. I suggest that you get parents to consider this matter. There is so much stress these days on education - or rather scholastic success - that this very virtue may degenerate into the very Worst kind of selfishness. I ask all you Scouters to face the implications of this matter, and, after most careful thought, give your chaps a lead.

3. Furthermore, it is sheer hypocrisy if our Scouts forget their homes and their mothers. I consider it a reproach on any Senior if he leaves his mother to do his washing up after his evening meal. If a Senior is home on a Sunday morning, I think he should most certainly prepare breakfast as well as give his Mum and Dad an early morning cup of tea. These are not duties - they are privileges. The attitude of mind should be that Mother *must* be given a rest on Sunday morning and that Dad deserves it too. They may both be getting on and mothers need cherishing. There are countless jobs
Seniors can do in their own homes - permanent ones, I mean. I have in mind the coal and coke supplies, cleaning the bath, sweeping the out-places, cleaning and dusting the living rooms on a Sunday. It is the attitude of mind that makes a happy home, and Senior Scouts ought to be makers of happy homes. Scout Leaders must make it their business to talk to every Senior Scout - maybe one by one - about these matters.

“Early morning cup of tea.”

4. There is work to be done in many hospitals. The blind, the deaf and the maimed are always with us. The ailing enjoy the cheerful visit - even if it is only a boy who calls round to see if there is anything he can do. Our Master gives us the essential clue here. Remember what He tells us to do to the naked, the hungry, the thirsty, the sick and to those in prison. Can I say anything more potent! But the example and the urging must come from the Scout Leader.

You will see, therefore, what I mean when I said that this was a spiritual matter and when I maintained that Scouting is doomed as a wonderful example of practical and applied Christianity if it loses this priceless good turn habit. It will then become just another Boys’ Club. What then do we lack, you and I? I think it is the courage of leadership. Boys desperately need a lead in this matter. They are surrounded by selfishness, false values and worldliness. They will respond to idealism and knightly virtue if the challenge is clear, clean and honest. It is up to us, and we dare not fail! If we do, we fail our own generation and the next. This requires immediate action by you and me.

The Love of Camping
The second quality that I have said we need to revive is the love of camping. Let us consider this more fully. I want to make it abundantly clear that I am not talking here of any highly organized camping programme persisting throughout the year. Such a
programme would only be suited to and enjoyed by a highly trained Troop of Seniors, and I am afraid few of us lead such Troops. I certainly do not. Once again it is the attitude of mind that counts. Get that right and the rest follows. In this matter we are driven back once more to our changing world for a reason. The last thirty years have given us (1) facilities for being entertained by radio and/or television; (2) considerably greater scope in transport, and (3) an unrelenting reverence for speed, power and the easy way. All this has tended to belittle in our minds the more natural and simple things. Yet these new discoveries will never suffice the soul and may - undirected and undedicated - lead to complete frustration. This is already happening. After much home work and study I don’t think a radio programme or television parlour game will give recreation to our Seniors - these things don’t recreate. Recreation is not passive - except in rest and in sleep. After intensive work, especially in hot weather, these boys need relaxation, freedom and quiet. If only your boys who are working so well and so hard at school and at technical examinations would try the effect of an evening walk, topped by a night in their tent either by themselves or with a friend! They need take very little; just a light tent, a small dixie, some food, a sleeping bag and a pair of rubber shoes. They don’t need to spend more than 1/- on bus fares and then they can walk a couple of miles.

“They need take very little.”

On the other hand, the freedom of their bicycles may very rightly have a very strong appeal. Let them try to leave by 7.30 p.m. and camp by 9 o’clock and cook themselves an evening meal at their leisure. There may be a moon and even a fleeting glimpse will be a treat. On the other hand, there may be a high wind which will give great content and contrast, but, best of all, there will be quiet. They can best appreciate God’s creation quietly - the outline of trees, the sunset, the noises of the night, the fleeting glimpse of an animal
impossible to recognise, the sudden flick of a bat and the wide awake calling of an owl. As these two boys sit by their little wood fire, they may decide that they must sleep outside their tent on such a lovely night. And why not? So they do. They lie snugly with their feet towards the dying fire and gaze up at the hundreds of stars and the silently fleeting clouds. What an experience this is, and they will not know when they fall asleep. Next morning they may need to be on their way early. After hearing the song of the birds and seeing the different shades of green of the trees and hedgerows in the early morning sunlight, they will probably decide that they have had the best of the day anyway. If it is a Sunday morning, they may have arranged to be free from duty at home and thus be able to stay on in camp and have breakfast. Very pleasant this. They may even get a swim. Then they can pack up and attend morning service at the village church, getting there at least 5 minutes early so as to give themselves plenty of time to make their private thanks.

The critical (and the cynical) may now be saying - “what about your good turns now?” My friends, I don’t suggest that Seniors camp every weekend or even regularly. My observation leads me to believe that very few Seniors ever go off to camp on their own. So many of them just camp when a weekend expedition has been organized. It is the attitude of mind that I am concerned about. Once again, it is a matter of leadership - the leadership of the Scout Leader. He must tell them what they are missing. If necessary he must set them an example.

_The Scout Leader’s Leadership_  
We all subscribe to the theory that the Court of Honour should makes programmes and carry them out, that the Patrol system is the key to success in Scouting, and that the Scout Leader’s principal job is to train his Patrol Leaders. This does not mean, however, that the Scout Leader does what his Patrol Leaders tell him. Believe it or not, this is happening far more than most of us think. I call it democracy at its worst. It is also leadership at its weakest. What should the Scouter’s main contribution be? It is
surely the imparting of technical Scouting skills to his Patrol Leaders and the inspiration to be doing the right thing. I can imagine a Court of Honour in session round the table with the Troop Leader or a Patrol Leader in the Chair and the Scout Leader reclining in an armchair nearby. If the Court starts to veer from true Scouting, does the sleeping watchdog in the armchair remain silent? Not on your life! He sits up and asks a question. Not a question on detail but one of principle. Why is this thing being done? Who will benefit and how? Again, towards the end of a Court, the Scout Leader may ask permission to sit at the table as he has an idea and wants to air it. Then the boys know that older leadership is asserting itself and usually they welcome it. Of course the Scout Leader must be tactful. That ought to go without saying. But it is he that must lead.

"Sleeping watchdog in the armchair."

It sometimes does happen that a Senior Scout Troop gets out of hand. Then the Scout Leader must act boldly and point the way towards better Scouting, however unpopular he may become for the time being. Nobody likes the truth when they are in the wrong, but, if the Scouts know intuitively that their Scout Leader is straight, that he has no axe to grind, and that he is experienced, then they will most certainly respond.

I have come at last to the end of this little book and nobody knows better than I do how inadequate it is. At the moment I feel it falls so far short of what is required that I should really start the thing all over again. I therefore apologise for not doing so, but, as I have other things to do besides Scouting and as writing books is a most exhausting pastime, it simply cannot be done. This paragraph must therefore be the end. How shall I finish? May I offer you one final thought? It is one which was always with me when I was a young Scouter and which still urges me on. Gentlemen, I think Scouting
is a modern, though junior, Order of Chivalry. Am I putting it too high? Sometimes you will probably say “yes”, but, when you really pierce the clouds, the answer is triumphantly “No”. Our Law, our Promise, our Founder, our boys - all pertain to chivalry, and it is our privilege to help them to bring nearer the Kingdom of God - not in our way, but in theirs.

May God bless them and you.
Chapter 19
POSTSCRIPT

SINCE Melville Balsillie first wrote this book only a matter of a few years ago there have been a considerable number of changes in Senior Scouting. The book has been amended accordingly and is right up to date at the time of this reprint but, because of the desire to refrain from interfering with the author’s original text more than was absolutely necessary, little or no mention has been made of:

1. The Duke of Edinburgh’s Award Scheme as it affects Senior Scouting.
2. The New Course in Leadership for Senior Scouts.
3. The Senior Scout Record Book.
4. The new Service requirement for the Queen’s Scout Badge.

Space does not permit of any lengthy reference to these matters now, but S.S.L.s and those who are responsible for the training of Senior Scouts should become acquainted with all of them.

All that it is possible to do here is to make a brief reference to the four subjects mentioned above.

1. *The Duke of Edinburgh Award Scheme*
   A special Handbook has been published by Scout Headquarters in conjunction with the Duke of Edinburgh Award Office giving details of the scheme by which members of the Scout Movement may gain the Award.

   This scheme has been approved by H.R.H. Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh, and allows members of the Scout Movement to reach first the Silver Standard and then the Gold Standard of the Award by gaining certain Proficiency Badges, successfully attending one of our Leadership Training Courses and carrying out some form of service for others. Thus it will be seen that the Award fits into our normal training programme.
The method of administering the scheme for the Movement cuts out the need for any records except at H.Q. There is no requirement that Districts or Counties should keep any records unless they want to. The Committee of the Council of the B.S.A. desires to avoid any unnecessary extra work being placed on the Movement, and when you have studied the special Handbook you will see that the only essential record outside that at H.Q. is the individual’s own Record Book.

When your Scouts, Senior Scouts or Rover Scouts wish to enter for the Award the Handbook explains how they should set about it. If there are any questions concerning the Award which do not appear to be answered in the Handbook, you should write to the Training Secretary at H.Q. and he will answer them for you.

Since the Movement entered the Scheme hundreds of Scouts have accepted its challenge and we are very proud of the number of Silver and Gold Awards that have been gained by Scouts.

S.S.L.s should do all that they can bring the Duke of Edinburgh Award Scheme to the notice of and then encourage them to participate.

2. The New Course in Leadership for Senior Scouts
The training of a Senior Scout in leadership is the task of his Senior Scout Leader. This Course is designed to supplement that training. It replaces the old Course for Senior Scout Patrol Leader Training and is concerned with all forms of leadership and not just leadership in Scouting. Scouting is only one of the fields of leadership open to a Senior Scout. Other fields which may be open to him include his school, his office, his workshop, his factory, his sports club, his Church, his hobby club, and eventually the local branch of his trade union or professional body, and local government and national politics.

Details of the Course are set out in a booklet called “Leadership. A Course for Senior Scouts” which is published by H.Q. price 1/6d.
A number of these Courses have already been held with marked success. Senior Scouts who have attended have expressed their strong approval of the value of such Courses and it is hoped that they will become a regular feature of District and County Senior Scout Training.

3. The Senior Scout Record Book
This Record Book (not to be confused with the Record Book which is issued to all who enter the Duke of Edinburgh Award Scheme) is an additional attempt to assist all Senior Scouts and Scouts over 15. It contains a wealth of information on Senior Scout affairs and provides ample space for recording the progress of a Scout who elects to continue his Scouting as a Senior Scout or as a Scout over 15. Such a booklet could become his prize possession and something that a Scout might wish to keep all his life.

It is felt that this booklet will meet a great need. Its cost is 3/- and it is suggested that all young men on becoming Senior Scouts should be presented with this Record Book or, at least, be encouraged to obtain one.

4. The new Service requirement for the Queen’s Scout Badge
Part of P.O.R. 440 has been amended to read as follows:-

(ii) “At any time after his fifteenth birthday and after becoming a First Class Scout, have carried out approved service to the community. The proposed service should be approved by his G.S.M., who may consult any Authority concerned. Service may be done within the Scout Movement (such as Senior Scout Instructor, working with Handicapped Scouts, etc.) or outside it (such as Sunday School teacher, Hospital service, Emergency service, etc.). A Certificate to the effect that this service has been carried out satisfactorily should be obtained by the Scout from the Unit concerned, such as Matron, Vicar, C.M. etc., and countersigned by his G.S.M.
The minimum duration of qualifying service is 24 working hours, either as regular service spread over 6 months or on a short-term project.

(iii) In the opinion of the Group Council be setting a personal example of the Scout way of life.

(iv) Have had an interview with the D.C., or an A.D.C. appointed by him for the purpose.

A Queen’s Scout will receive his Certificate if he so desires at one of the receptions held at regular intervals by the Chief Scout."

The importance of this additional requirement in the Queen’s Scout Badge (effective from I. I. 65) cannot be stressed too much and it is to be hoped that S.S.L.s and Scouters responsible for Scouts over 15 will do all that they can to bring this home to their Senior Scouts and Scouts.

L.E.S.
APPENDIX
DISTRICT ORGANISATION

DISTRICT SENIOR SCOUT TROOPS

167B. (i) The L.A. and D.C. may form one or more District Senior Scout Troops, which suitably qualified Scouts from Boy Scout Troops, who otherwise would not receive adequate Senior Scout training, may join.

(ii) Scouts joining District Senior Scout Troops retain their membership of the Groups from which they have advanced.

(iii) A boy of Senior Scout age who is not a member of the Movement may be accepted into a District Senior Scout Troop subject to the normal conditions of admission.

(iv) District Senior Scout Troops must be registered at H.Q. as Groups. The procedure for registration, cancellation, etc., set out in Part VI should be followed as far as applicable.

(v) Warrants as S.S.L. and A.S.S.L. may be granted to Scouters of District Senior Scout Troops.

(vi) The formation of District Senior Scout Troops should not hinder the establishment of Senior Scout Troops within existing individual Groups where a sufficient number of Senior Scouts and Senior Scout Leaders are or become available.

GROUP ORGANISATION

SENIOR SCOUT LEADER AND ASSISTANT SENIOR SCOUT LEADER

Appointment
247A. S.S.L.s and A.S.S.L.s are appointed on the recommendation of the L.A. and D.C. with warrants in accordance with Part III.

Ladies
247B. In no circumstances will a warrant for either rank be granted to a lady.
Qualifications

247c. The special qualifications for S.S.L. and A.S.S.L. in addition to the general qualifications set out in Rules 68-71 are as follows:-


(2) Age sufficient to enable him to carry out the work satisfactorily. Normally a warrant for S.S.L. will not be issued for any person under the age of 25; but in an exceptional ease, on the special recommendation of the L.A. and D.C. submitted through the C.C., a reduction of the minimum age may be permitted. Age for A.S.S.L., not less than 21 in normal circumstances. In exceptional cases, on the specific recommendation of the L.A. and D.C. submitted through the C.C., a warrant as A.S.S.L. may be issued to a person under this age, but under no circumstances under the age of 19.

(3) No person holding any other warrant in the same Group, except that of G.S.M., may be appointed to either of these ranks.

Functions

247n. (i) The S.S.L. takes charge of the Senior Troop, with the assistance of any A.S.S.L.s, subject to the general supervision as in Rule 173 of the G.S.M.

(ii) The S.S.L. will, however, delegate as far as possible to the Court of Honour as in Rule 247L all internal matters of discipline and administration, including the expenditure of Senior Troop funds as defined in Rule 209; and in the management of the affairs of the Senior Troop the fullest possible use must be made of the Court of Honour.

(iii) An A.S.S.L. may be appointed to be charge of a Senior Scout Patrol within the Scout Troop.
A.S.S.L.s necessary
247E. To ensure continuity it is most desirable that every Senior Troop should have an A.S.S.L.; and where a Senior Troop consists of more than four Patrols, additional A.S.S.L.s are desirable.

Uniform and Badges

THE SENIOR TROOP

Conditions of formation
247o. The Senior Troop may consist of one or more Senior Scout Patrols, but the L.A. and D.C. may not permit the development of a Senior Troop of more than one Patrol unless they are satisfied that there is a suitable Scouter available not holding any other warrant in the Group except, if necessary, that of G.S.M.

Troop Leader (S)
247H. (i) A Troop Leader(S) may, if desired, be appointed by the S.S.L. in consultation with the Court of Honour.

(ii) The following qualifications are required:- Ability to lead. Service as a Patrol Leader(S) for at least six months. The Queen’s Scout Badge. A general knowledge of “Scouting for Boys” and current Senior Scout literature.

(iii) The Troop Leader(S) wears uniform as in Rules 286, and badges as in Rule 316B.

Time Patrol
247s. (i) The Senior Troop is composed of Senior Scout Patrols, consisting of not less than three and not more than seven Senior Scouts including the Patrol Leader(S) and Second(S).

(ii) The Patrol should be the unit in most activities. *Ad hoc* teams may be formed for special activities.
Patrol Leader(S)
247j. (i) A Patrol Leader(S) is a Senior Scout appointed by the S.S.L., in consultation with the Court of Honour or the Patrol concerned, to take charge of a Senior Scout Patrol.

(ii) Patrol Leaders(S) wear uniform as in Rule 286, and badges as in Rule 316A.

Second(S)
247K. (i) A Second(S) is a Senior Scout selected by the Patrol Leader(S) with the approval of the S.S.L. and the Court of Honour to assist him and to take his place when absent.

(ii) Seconds(S) wear uniform as in Rules 286, and badges in Rule 316.

Court of Honour
247L. (i) The Court of Honour is a body composed of the Troop Leader(S), if any, and the Patrol Leaders(S). Where there are less than three Patrols, the Seconds(S) will also be members of the Court of Honour. Where there is only one Patrol, the Patrol in Council will replace the Court of Honour. The Scouters of the Senior Troop, if present, should act in an advisory capacity only.

(ii) The Court of Honour deals with internal matters, including the expenditure of Senior funds, in accordance with Rule 247D (ii).

THE SENIOR SCOUT

Investiture
247M. A boy becomes a Senior Scout by investiture, during which he makes or reaffirms the Scout Promise as in Rule 3. Suggested forms of ceremony are contained in a folder card entitled “Senior Scout Ceremonies” obtainable from H.Q. (Equipment
Department). He is then entitled to wear uniform as in Rules 286, and badges as in Rule 315.

**Age limits**

247N. (i) To become a Senior Scout a boy must have attained the age of 15 (except as provided in (ii) below), but not have reached his eighteenth birthday.

(ii) Where there is a separate Senior Troop or Patrol, each individual case will be considered by the S.M., S.S.L. and G.S.M. who may permit a Scout to go up six months before or after his fifteenth birthday in accordance with his physical or mental development.

(iii) A Senior Scout in a separate Senior Troop or Patrol may, with the approval of the G.S.M., also continue as a Patrol Leader in the Boy Scout Troop until his sixteenth birthday.

(iv) A Senior Scout should leave the Troop or Senior Troop at the age of 18 unless he receives the D.C.’s sanction to remain; but in no circumstances may he remain after his nineteenth birthday.

**Qualifications**

247o. Before being invested as a Senior Scout he must either hold the First Class Badge; or complete the Initial Test as set out in Rule 435 to the satisfaction of his Scouter.

**Subsequent training**

247p. After investiture as a Senior Scout he proceeds to qualify for:-

(1) First Class Badge - if not already held (Rule 436).

(2) Bushman’s Thong, Seaman’s Badge, or Airman’s Badge (Rule 429), as may be appropriate.

(3) Queen’s Scout (Rule 440).
Combined meetings
247Q. (i) Senior Scouts in a L.A. may meet together as desired for training or other activities.

(ii) Such activities will be stimulated and co-ordinated by the D.C., A.D.C.(S), D.S.S.L., or such other experienced Scouter as the D.C. may appoint for the purpose. See Rule 167B.

Uniform and badges
247R. A Senior Scout wears uniform as in Rule 286, and badges as in Rule 315.

UNIFORM
GENERAL

Uniform described
275. (i) The correct uniform to be worn by Scouts, Scouters and Non-Warranted and Honorary ranks, as also by members of the Girl Guides Association in certain cases when helping with Scout Groups, is described under the various headings in this Part of P.O.R. The badges of rank to be worn are set out in Part VIII.

(ii) No alteration may be made in the uniform as described nor any addition to it, with the exception of authorised badges and decorations and certain optional articles as set out in various rules below.

(iii) Bright metal buttons, unauthorised badges, fancy decorations and personal adornments must not be displayed.

(iv) Shorts of the “Lederhosen” pattern are not to be worn.

(v) Uniformity of dress within each Section of a Group should be maintained.

Public occasions
276. Whenever uniform is worn in public it must be correct and complete.
Camp
277. Members of the Movement may, at the discretion of the Scouter in charge, wear any convenient clothing in camp, but whenever they appear in public outside the camp limits, they must be in proper uniform.

Headgear
278. (i) Members of the Movement (other than Cubs) may wear either the Scout hat as described in Rule 283 (i), or a beret of the appropriate colour prescribed below, provided- that all members of the section wear the same type of headgear.

(ii) The appropriate colour of the beret to be worn by each rank of the Movement is as follows:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Colour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scouts</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scout over 15</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senior Scouts</td>
<td>Maroon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rovers</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.S.S.L.s, S.S.L.s and A.S.S.L.s</td>
<td>Maroon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissioners and all other Scouters</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Apart from those mentioned in Rule 29S)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Colour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Warranted and Honorary ranks</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iii) No badge, other than those authorised in Part VIII for the rank concerned, may be displayed on any headgear worn in accordance with this rule.

(iv) Nothing in this rule shall apply to any Sea or Air rank, who will wear the headgear specified in the rule relating to the rank concerned.

Scarf colours
279. (i) Similar scarves must be worn by all members of a Group.
(ii) The colour and design of Group scarves will be chosen by the G.S.M. in consultation with the Group Council, subject to the approval of the L.A. and D.C., who will arrange that as far as possible no two Groups in the same L.A. shall have scarves of the same colour and design.

**SCOUTS**

**Essential articles**

283. (i) A Scout wears uniform as follows, with the appropriate badges of rank described in Rules 311-314.

Headgear. Khaki hat (four dents), flat brim, leather band round crown, and lace worn at back of head and tied in front on the brim of the hat, or, beret of the appropriate colour specified in Rule 278 (ii). Note:- All members of a Section (other than Scouters) must wear the same type of headgear.

Scarf. Of the Group colour worn with a woggle (other than the Gilwell pattern) or a loose knot at the throat.

Shirt. Dark blue, khaki, green or grey, with two patch pockets (buttoned), and shoulder straps optional; or a jersey or sweater or the same colours.

Shorts. Dark blue, khaki, green, or grey.

Belt. Brown leather or web.

Stockings. Any plain colour; worn turned down below knee with green tabbed garter showing on outside. Two bands of a second colour on turn-over tops are permitted.

Boots or shoes. Brown or black.

Shoulder knot. Braid 6 in. long, in. wide, of Patrol colours, on left shoulder.
Shoulder badge. Indicating the Group, worn on right shoulder or on both, according to the custom of the Group. Members of Groups which have Sea or Air Scout Sections must not include the words “Sea Scouts” or “Air Scouts” in the Group title.

County and other emblem. If and as authorised under Rules 342-345.

Optional articles
(ii) The following optional articles may also be worn or carried: Haversack (worn on the back, and not the side) or ruc-sac. Lanyard. To carry whistle or knife.

Hand axe. Carried on the belt, but only on appropriate occasions.

Staff. Of natural wood, marked in feet and inches. Carried on appropriate occasions.

Cord. A length of cord may be carried on the belt.

Outdoor wear. The members of any Section of a Group should be encouraged as far as possible to wear raincoats of the same style and colour, but, if necessary, an overcoat of plain colour may be worn. A lumber jacket or battle blouse may be worn; but these should be of the same style and colour within the Section of a Group; bright colours or loud patterns are not allowed.

SEA SCOUTS

284. (i) A Sea Scout wears uniform as for Scout, as described in Rule 283, but with the following differences: Cap. Blue jacket’s cap with white cover and a ribbon inscribed “Sea Scouts”.

Shirt or jersey. Dark blue. Jerseys with the words “Sea Scouts” in white letters across the chest; or shirts with an anchor badge on the right breast.
Shorts. Dark blue.

Belt. To be worn either underneath or outside jersey, whichever is the practice of the Group.

Stockings. Dark blue. Two bands of a second colour on turn-Over tops are permitted.

(ii) Whilst fishing or boating in bad or cold weather, there is no objection to Sea Scouts wearing trousers, but on shore and on ordinary occasions shorts are to be worn, and no Sea Scout may wear trousers as part of his uniform except in the special circumstances mentioned. The wearing of such articles of clothing as a blue jacket’s jumper is not permitted. Waterproofs or oilskins and sou’wester may be worn at the discretion of the S.M. From 1st May to 30th September a white shirt may be worn during Sea Scout activities other than ceremonial parades. It will be worn without badges but with the Group scarf.

AIR SCOUTS
285. An Air Scout wears uniform as for Scout, as described in Rule 283, but with the following differences:-

Shirt or jersey. Grey. An Air Scout badge may be worn on the left breast above any service stars or medal ribbons. In place of this badge the Air Scout Wings Badge is worn by a holder of the British Gliding Association certificate with an “A” and “B” endorsement, by a holder of a private pilot’s licence, or by a person who has qualified to wear pilot’s wings in any of H.M. Services.

Shorts. Dark blue.

Stockings. Grey.

Beret. Dark blue; with the Air Scout beret badge in gold worn over the left eye.
286. A Senior Scout wears uniform as for Scout, Sea Scout, or Air Scout, as the case may be, as described in Rules 283-285, but with the following differences:


Shoulder patch. Of Patrol colours, instead of shoulder knot, 1 ½ in. square, parti-coloured diagonally. Worn at the top of the left sleeve immediately below the shoulder seam, the first named colour (given in the pamphlet “Over 15”) being at the top along the seam and facing front. A Senior Scout who remains in the Scout Troop in accordance with Rule 244 (iv) or Rule 247N (iii) will not wear a shoulder patch, but will continue to wear the shoulder knot of his Scout Patrol.

Garter tabs. Maroon.

Thumbstick. As alternative to staff.

Trousers. Lovat, or dark blue. Long trousers may be worn as an alternative to shorts by Senior Scouts who are members of a Senior Scout Troop, or of a Senior Scout Patrol where there is no Senior Scout Troop, subject to the following conditions:

(1) The trousers must conform to the shade and pattern approved by H.Q.

(2) All members of the Senior Scout Troop or the Senior Scout Patrol must dress alike on any given occasion (i.e. all in long trousers of the same approved shade and pattern, or all in shorts).

(3) Socks should be of an appropriate colour to match the trousers.
(4) Trousers for Senior Air Scouts and Senior Sea Scouts will be dark blue.

(For epaulettes, which are classed as badges of rank, see Rule 315 (1).

BADGES OF RANK
SENIOR SCOUTS

Senior Scout
315. A Senior Scout wears the following badges:-

(1) In uniform: the cloth Arrowhead badge (see Rule 311 (1) but with the words “Senior Scouts” in place of “Boy Scouts”) on the shirt or jersey; maroon epaulettes with the Scout badge and the words “Senior Scouts” all in gold; and on the front of the hat, a metal badge consisting of a bar with the letter “S” superimposed, or, on the beret, over the left eye, a cloth badge with a maroon background. Note:- A Senior Air Scouts wears on a dark blue beret over the left eye, a metal badge consisting of a bar with the letter “S” superimposed, beneath the Air Scout beret badge in gold.

(2) In ordinary clothes: a white metal buttonhole badge, with the letter “S” superimposed and the word “Senior Scouts” below.

(Note: or, as an alternative, a pin-type maroon lapel badge with the letter “S” in silver superimposed.)

Second(S)
316. A Second(S) wears the badges as for a Senior Scout, and, in addition, one braid vertical stripe as in Rule 312 but maroon in colour.

Patrol Leader(S)
316A. A Patrol Leader(S) wears badges as for a Senior Scout but, in addition:-
(1) two braid vertical stripes as in Rule 313 (1) but maroon in colour;

(2) on the beret over the left eye (instead of the Senior Scout beret badge) a cloth badge in silver and red on a maroon background similar in design to the Patrol Leader’s beret badge (see Rule 313 (1)) but with a maroon “S” superimposed.

*Note:* Senior Sea Scout Patrol Leaders wear a cap ribbon showing the arrowhead badge between the words “Senior” and “Sea Scouts”. Senior Air Scout Patrol Leaders wear on the beret over the left eye the metal “S” bar described in Rule 315 (1) beneath the Air Scout Patrol Leader’s beret badge in silver.

*Troop Leader(S)*

316B. A Troop Leader(S) wears badges as for a Patrol Leader(S) but with a third maroon stripe, under the arrowhead badge.
a book that all Senior Scouts should read!

“LOOK WIDE”

(A BOOK FOR SENIORS)

192 pages of really helpful yarns and instructive information, with amusing sketches to underline the important points.

Price 10/6d.
Post 8d.

Published by
The Boy Scouts Association
25 Buckingham Palace Road
London S.W.1

obtainable from...
ALL Scout Shops or your local Bookseller